## Lectures on Torus Embeddings and Applications

(Based on joint work with Katsuya Miyake)

By

Tadao Oda

Tata Institute of Fundamental Research Bombay 1978

## Lectures on Torus Embeddings and Applications

(Based on joint work with Katsuya Miyake)

By

Tadao Oda

Published for the **Tata Institute of Fundamental Research, Bombay Springer–Verlag** Berlin Heidelberg New York **1978** 

### © Tata Institute of Fundamental Research, 1978

ISBN 3–540–08852–0 Springer–Verlag Berlin. Heidelberg. New York ISBN 0–387–08852–0 Springer–Verlag New York. Heidelberg. Berlin

> No part of this book may be reproduced in any form by print, microfilm or any other means without written permission from the Tata Institute of Fundamental Research, Colaba, Bombay 400 005

Printed by K. P. Puthran at the Tata Press Limited, 414 Veer Savarkar Marg, Bombay 400 025 and published by H. Goetze, Springer–Verlag, Heidelberg, West Germany

Printed In India

# Introduction

In recent years, the theory of torus embeddings has been finding many applications. The point of the theory lies in its ability of translating meaningful algebra-geometric and analytic phenomena into very simple statements about the combinatorics of cones in affine space over the reals.

In different terminology, it was first introduced by Demazure [8] and then by Mumford et al. [63], Satake [57] and Miyake-Oda [40]. There is already a good and concise account on it in [63]. Nevertheless, we produce here another. For one thing, we wanted to supply the details of the partial classification of complete non-singular 3-dimensional torus embeddings announced in [40].

Besides, we wanted to make the theory, in its most general form, accessible to non-algebraic geometers in view of its possible applications in other branches of mathematics. We can state at least the main results without using algebraic geometry, although for the proof we cannot avoid using it. This was made possible by the following down-to-earth description due to Ramanan of normal affine torus embeddings over a field k of finite type as the set of unitary semigroup homomorphisms

 $U(\sigma) = \operatorname{Hom}_{\operatorname{unit,semigr}}(\check{\sigma} \cap M, k),$ 

where  $(i)N \cong \mathbb{Z}^r$  and  $\sigma$  is a convex rational polyhedral cone in  $N_R \cong R^r$ with  $\sigma \cap (-\sigma) = \{0\}, (ii)$  for the dual  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module M of N,

 $\check{\sigma} \cap M = \{m \in M : \langle m, y \rangle \ge 0 \text{ for all } y \in \sigma\}$ 

is a finitely generated additive semigroup and (iii) k is considered to be a semigroup under the *multiplication*.

v

When we have a suitable collection  $\triangle$  of such cones, an *r.p.p. de*composition, then  $U(\sigma)'s$  can be canonically patched together to form a normal and separated algebraic variety over k locally of finite type

### $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle)$

which has an effective action of the algebraic torus

$$T_N = N \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} k^* = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(M, k^*) = k^* \times \ldots \times k^*$$

with a dense orbit. Such a variety is called a *torus embedding*, since it is a partial compactification of  $T_N$ . Conversely, we get all normal torus embeddings in this way (Theorem 4.1). Important Algebre-geometric phenomena can most often be described purely in terms of  $\triangle$  (Theorems 4.2, 4.3, 4.4 and Corollary 4.5).

We may say that  $\triangle$  contains all the relevant information, in a unified and globalized way, about the "exponents of monomials" necessary to describe such varieties. When an algebraic variety or a morphism can be described solely in terms of monomials, then there is a good chance that it can most effectively be described in terms of torus embeddings. For instance, a normal irreducible affine algebraic variety  $V \subset A_r$  defined by equation of the form

$$X_1^{a_1} X_2^{a_2} \dots X_r^{a_r} = X_1^{b_1} X_2^{b_2} \dots X_r^{b_r}$$

can be expressed as  $U(\sigma)$  for some  $\sigma$ . (cf. (7.9))

We try to avoid overlaps with Demazure [8] and Mumford et al. [63] as much as possible. For later convenience for reference, we collect together in §. 4 the first main theorem in their most general form and leave their proof to §. 5. Various standard examples are collected together in §. 7.

In §. 6, we deal with torus embedding which can be embedded into projectives spaces. The results are slightly more general than those in [8] but less so than those in [63].

§. 8 and §. 9 are devoted to the classification of complete nonsingular torus embeddings. We are reduced to the classification of certain weighted circular graphs and that of weighted triangulations of the 2-sphere. As by-products, we obtain many interesting complete nonsingular rational three folds. (cf. Prop. 9.4) Besides, we see that torus embeddings provides us with a good testing ground for important conjectures on birational geometry in higher dimension.

There are many basic results we left out : For the cohomology of equi variant coherent sheaves on torus embeddings as well as the description of the automorphism groups of torus embeddings, we refer the reader to Demazure [8].

Mumford et al. [63] generalizes the notion of torus embedding to that of *toroidal embeddings* and proves very important *semi-stable reduction theorem*. Torus embeddings have also been used effectively in the compactification problem of the moduli spaces by Satake [57], Hirzebruch [19], Mumford et al.[61], Namikawa [46], Nakamura [44], Rapoport [54], Oda-Seshadri [49] and Ishida [26].

Here we deal with more elementary but illustrative applications in Chapter 2.

When the ground field k is the field  $\mathbb{C}$  of complex numbers or one with a *non-archimedean* rank one valuation, then  $U(\sigma) = \text{Hom}_{unit.semigr.}$  $(\check{\sigma} \cap M, k)$ , hence  $T_N \text{emb}(\Delta)$ , has the topology induced from that of k by the valuation. Let  $CT_N$  be the maximal compact torus of  $T_N$  in this topology. Then we can usually draw the picture of the quotient of a torus embedding  $T_N \text{emb}(\Delta)$  by  $CT_N$  and get better geometric insight. The quotient was introduced by Mumford et al. [61]. We call it the *manifold with corners* after Borel-Serre [4] and denote it by

#### $Mc(N, \triangle) = T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle)/CT_N.$

Using this we will be able to visualize the construction and degenerations of complex tori, Hopf surfaces and other class  $VII_0$  surfaces introduced by Inoue. (cf. §. 11, §. 13, §. 14 and §. 15). Using Suwa's classification of hyper elliptic surfaces om [60], Tsuchihashi [62] were able to describe their degenerations and the compactification of the moduli space in terms of torus embeddings.

There are many recent results on the actions of algebraic and analytic groups other than algebraic tori on algebraic varieties and complex manifolds. See, for instance, Akao [1], Popov [52], [53], Orlik-Wagreich [50] and Ishida [25]. Complete non-singular 2-dimensional torus embeddings over  $\mathbb{C}$  give rise to rational compactifications of  $\mathbb{C}^2$  and  $(\mathbb{C}^*)^2$ . Compactifications of  $\mathbb{C}^2$  were shown to be always rational by Kodaira [31] and were classified by Morrow [37]. There are, however, many non-rational, even nonalgebraic, compactifications of  $(\mathbb{C}^*)^2$ . They were recently classified by simha [58] and Ueda [64].

These notes are based on a joint work with K. Miyake of Nagoya University and grew out of the lectures which the author gave at Tata Institute of Fundamental Research, University of Paris-Sud, Orsay, Nagoya University, Tohoku University, Instituto Jorge Juan, Harvard University and various other places. He would like to thank the mathematicians at these institutions for the hospitality and the patience shown to him. The notes taken by K.Makio at Tohoku University was very helpful.<sup>1</sup>

Recall that for a connected locally noetherian scheme X, its *du*alizing complex  $R_X$  is determined uniquely up to quasi-isomorphism, dimension shift and the tensor product of invertible  $0_X$ -modules. (cf. Hartshorne, Residue and duality, Lecture Notes in Math. 20, Springer-Verlag, 1966).

Let  $T = T_N$  be an algebraic torus and consider the normal torus embedding Temb( $\triangle$ ) corresponding to an r.p.p.decomposition  $(N, \triangle)$ . Let us fix an orientation for each cone  $\sigma \in \triangle$  and define, in case dim  $\tau$  – dim  $\sigma = 1$ , the incidence number  $[\sigma : \tau] = 0, 1$  or -1 in an appropriate manner so that we have a complex

$$C(\triangle,\mathbb{Z}) = (\ldots \to 0 \to C^0 \xrightarrow{d} C^1 \to \ldots \to C^{\operatorname{rank} N} \to 0 \to \ldots)$$

where  $C^j$  is the free  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module generated by the set of *j*-dimensional cones in  $\triangle$  and where

$$d(\sigma) = \sum_{\dim \tau - \dim \sigma = 1} [\sigma : \tau](\tau).$$

viii

<sup>&</sup>lt;sup>1</sup>After these notes were written, M.Ishida of Tohoku University obtained the following seemingly definitive result on the Cohen-Macaulay and Gorenstein properties in relation to torus embeddings.

Let *X* be a *T*-invariant closed connected reduced subscheme of Temb( $\triangle$ ) and consider the complex  $R_X$  of  $0_X$ -modules defined by

$$R_X^J = \oplus 0_Y$$

where the direct sum is taken over all the T-invariant closed *irreducible* subvarieties of *X* which is of codimension *j* in  $Temb(\triangle)$  and where  $\delta$  :  $R_X^j \to R_X^{j+1}$  is defined as follows :  $X = \bigcup_{\sigma \in \underline{\Sigma}} orb(\sigma)$  for a *star closed* subset  $\underline{\Sigma} = \{\sigma \in \Delta; orb(\sigma) \subset X\}$ . When  $Y = orb(\sigma)$ , then for  $f_\sigma \in 0_Y$ ,

$$\delta(f_{\sigma}) = \sum [\sigma : \tau] \text{(the restriction of } f_{\sigma} \text{ to } \overline{\text{orb}(\tau)})$$

with the sum taken over  $\tau \in \triangle$  with dim  $\tau$  – dim  $\sigma$  = 1.

**Theorem 0.1** ((Ishida)). If X is a T-invariant closed connected reduced subscheme of a normal torus embedding  $Temb(\Delta)$ , then  $R_X$  defined above is the dualizing complex for X.

For  $\rho \in E$ , let  $\sum_{\rho} = \{\sigma \in \sum; \sigma < \rho\}$  and consider the complex of *k*-modules  $C(\sum_{\rho}, k)$  with the coboundary map induced by *d*.

**Corollary 1** ((Ishida)). *Let X be as above. Then X is Cohen-Macaulay if and only if there exists*  $\ell$  *such that for any*  $\rho \in \Sigma$ *, we have* 

$$H^j(\sum_\rho,k)=0 \quad for \quad j\neq \ell$$

We immediately see that  $Tamb(\delta)$  itself is Chohen-Maculay (cf. Remark after our Prop. 6.6 and Hochster [20]). On the other hand, if  $Temb(\Delta) = A_r$  is the affine space, we get the results in Reisner (Cohen-Macaulay quotients of polynomial rings, Advances in Math. 21(1976), 30-43) and Hochster (Cohen-Macaulay rings, combinatorics and simplicial complexes, in *Ring Theory II*, Lecture Notes in Pure and App. Math. 26(1977). Dekker, pp. 171-223).

In a special case, the complex  $R_X$ . already appears in [44].

Tadao Oda Mathematical Institute Tohoku University Sendai, 980 Japan

# Contents

Introduction v		
1	Toru	s embeddings 1
	1	Algebraic tori
	2	Torus embeddings and Summaries theorem 3
	3	Rational partial polyhedral decompositions 4
	4	First main theorems
	5	The proof of theorems in §.4
	6	Projective torus embeddings 19
	7	Example of torus embeddings and morphisms 27
	8	Torus embeddings of dimension $\leq 2$
	9	Complete non-singular torus embeddings in dimension 3 45
2	App	lications 91
	10	Manifolds with corners associated to torus embeddings $\ . \ 91$
	11	Complex tori
	12	Compact complex surfaces of class VII
	13	Hopf surfaces and their degeneration
	14	Inoue's examples of class $VII_0$ surfaces
	15	Hilbert modular surfaces and class $VII_0$ surfaces $\ldots 127$

xi

## **Chapter 1**

## **Torus embeddings**

For simplicity, we work over an algebraically closed field k of arbitrary characteristic. All k-algebras are commutative with unity and all k-algebra homomorphisms preserve unity. Although rather unconventional, we mean by an algebraic variety a reduced, irreducible and separated scheme over k which is only *locally* of finite type, i.e. possibly an infinite union of open subsets which are usual affine varieties of finite type.

## 1 Algebraic tori

In this section, we recall basic facts about algebraic tori which we use later.

We denote by  $k^*$  the multiplicative group of non-zero elements of k considered as an *algebraic group* over k. It is usually denoted by  $G_m$  and is the affine algebraic group  $\text{Spec}(k[t, t^{-1}])$  endowed with the comultiplication  $t \mapsto t \otimes t$  on the coordinate ring. It is more convenient to consider it as a group functor which assigns to a k-algebra B its multiplicative group  $B^*$  of units.

An *algebraic torus* over k is an algebraic group T isomorphic to a finite direct product  $k^* \times \cdots \times k^*$ .

1

Mutually dual free  $\mathbb{Z}$ -modules M and N with the pairing  $\langle, \rangle : M \times$ 

 $N \to \mathbb{Z}$  give rise to an algebraic torus

$$T = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(M, k^*) = N \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} k^*.$$

2 Conversely, an algebraic torus T gives rise to the character group

$$M = \operatorname{Hom}_{\operatorname{alg.gr}}(T, k^*)$$

and the group of 1-parameter subgroups

$$N = \operatorname{Hom}_{\operatorname{alg.gr}}(k^*, T),$$

both written additively, together with the duality pairing

$$\langle , \rangle : M \times N \to \operatorname{Hom}_{\operatorname{alg.gr}}(k^*, k^*) = \mathbb{Z}$$

For *m* in *M*, we denote by  $e(m) : T \to k^*$  the corresponding character. The coordinate ring  $\lceil (0_T)$  is the group algebra of *M* over *k* with  $\{e(m); m \in M\}$  forming a *k*-basis and with e(m + m') = e(m)e(m'). For *n* in *N*, the corresponding 1-parameter subgroup sends *t* in  $k^*$  to the element  $t^{\langle ?,n \rangle}$  of  $T = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(M, k^*)$  which maps *m* in *M* to  $t^{\langle m,n \rangle}$  in  $k^*$ .

A homomorphism  $f: T \to T'$  of algebraic tori correspond in oneto-one fashion with a homomorphism  $f_*: N \to N'$  and a homomorphism  $f^*: M' \to M$ , where N' and M' are, respectively, the group of 1-parameter subgroups and character group of T'. The following fact is quite relevant to us later: f is surjective if and only if  $f_*$  has finite cokernel (resp.  $f^*$  is injective).

The main reason why things work out so well later is that algebraic tori are the only algebraic groups which, besides being connected and commutative, satisfy the following basic complete reducibility property:

### **3 Theorem.** *Every algebraic representation of an algebraic torus is completely reducible, and is in fact a direct sum of one dimensional representations, i.e. characters.*

For the proof of this theorem as well as other basic facts about algebraic groups, we refer the reader to Borel [3].

### 2 Torus embeddings and Summaries theorem

An algebraic action of an algebraic torus T on an algebraic variety X is a morphism  $T \times X \to X$  satisfying the usual axioms (tt')x = t(t'x) and ex = x for  $t, t' \in T$ ,  $x \in X$  and e = (the identity of T). When algebraic tori T and T' act on algebraic varieties X and X', respectively, an *equivariant morphism* consists of a homomorphism  $f: T \to T'$  and a morphism  $\overline{f}: X \to X'$  such that  $\overline{f}(tx) = f(t)\overline{f}(x)$  for  $t \in T$  and  $x \in X$ .

Here is one of the basic results about torus actions:

**Theorem (Sumihiro)** If an algebraic torus T acts algebraically on a normal algebraic variety over k locally of finite type, then X is covered by T-stable affine open subsets of finite type.

We do not repeat the proof here and refer the reader to [59] or [63, I.2, Thm.5]. Note that since Pic(G) is finite by [55, Cor. VII 1.6], the argument in [63] can be modified to cover the general case in [59]. Ishida pointed out that if an algebraic group *G* acts on *X* locally of finite type, then *X* is covered by *G*-stable open sets of finite type to which [59] ap- **4** plies.

**Remark.** As was pointed out by H.Matsumura, the assertion of the theorem is not true unless *X* is normal. Indeed,  $T = k^*$  acts on the rational curve *X* with a node obtained by identifying the zero and the point at infinity of the projective line  $P_1$ . The node does not have any *T*-stable affine open neighborhood. When  $k = \mathbb{C}$ ,  $\mathbb{C}^*$  acts *analytically* on an elliptic curve *E*, which is the quotient of  $\mathbb{C}^*$  by an infinite cyclic subgroup. Obviously, there is no  $\mathbb{C}^*$ -stable open neighborhood. (cf. §. 11).

When an algebraic torus T acts on X, not much is lost, even if we assume the action to be (even scheme-theoretically) *effective*. Indeed, since T is commutative, we can replace T by its quotient torus by the kernel of the canonical homomorphism from T to the automorphism group functor Aut(X). In these notes, we are interested in almost homogeneous (or sometimes called pre-homogeneous) algebraic torus actions on irreducible algebraic varieties, i.e. those which have a dense orbit. The dense orbit is necessarily Zariski open, and is isomorphic to T when the action is effective. Thus we are led to the following:

**Definition.** A *torus embedding*  $T \subset X$  consists of an algebraic variety X containing T as a Zariski open dense subset and an algebraic action of T on X which extends the group law of T, i.e. we have a commutative diagram

$$\begin{array}{ccc} T \times X \longrightarrow X \\ \cup & \cup \\ T \times T \longrightarrow T. \end{array}$$

An equivariant dominant morphism from a torus embedding  $T \subset X$ to another  $T' \subset X'$  is a dominant morphism (i.e. with dense image)  $f: X \to X'$  whose restriction to *T* induces a *surjective* homomorphism  $f|T: T \to T'$  and which is equivariant with respect to the actions, i.e. the following diagram is commutative:



Thus we have the category of torus embeddings.

Although dominant morphisms look too restrictive, those are the only equivariant morphisms which can be described in terms of r.p.p. decompositions.

We will give typical examples of torus embeddings in §. 7.

## **3** Rational partial polyhedral decompositions

We denote by  $\mathbb{Z}$ ,  $\mathbb{Q}$  and  $\mathbb{R}$  the set of integers, rational numbers and real numbers, respectively.  $\mathbb{Z}_0$ ,  $\mathbb{Q}_0$  and  $\mathbb{R}_0$  are the sets of *non-negative* elements in them, respectively.

For a free  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module  $N \cong \mathbb{Z}^r$  of rank r, let  $M = Hom_{\mathbb{Z}}(N, \mathbb{Z})$  be its dual  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module with the canonical pairing  $\langle , \rangle : M \times N \to \mathbb{Z}$ . We denote their scalar extensions to  $\mathbb{R}$  by  $N_{\mathbb{R}} = \mathbb{R} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} N$ ,  $M_{\mathbb{R}}$  and  $\langle , \rangle : M_{\mathbb{R}} \times N_{\mathbb{R}} \to \mathbb{R}$ .

**Definition.** A subset  $\sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$  is called a strongly convex rational polyhedral cone with apex 0 (or simply a *cone* later) if  $\sigma \cap (-\sigma) = \{0\}$  and there exist  $n_1, \ldots, n_s$  in N such that

$$\sigma = \mathbb{R}_{\circ}n_1 + \cdots + \mathbb{R}_{\circ}n_1 = \{a_1n_1 + \cdots + a_sn_s; a_1, \dots, a_s \in \mathbb{R}_{\circ}\}.$$

 $n_1, \ldots, n_s$ , under the condition that they are irredundant with each  $n_1$  a **6** primitive element of *N*), are uniquely determined by  $\sigma$  and are called the *fundamental generators* of  $\sigma$ . dim  $\sigma$  is the dimension of the  $\mathbb{R}$ -vector subspace  $\sigma + (-\sigma)$  in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  generated by  $\sigma$ .

When rank N = 3, the following are example of cones.



**Definition.** Let  $\sigma$  be a cone in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$ . A subset  $\sigma'$  of  $\sigma$  is a *face* of  $\sigma$ , and denoted  $\sigma' < \sigma$ , if there exists *m* in *M* such that  $\langle m, y \rangle \ge 0$  for all  $y \in \sigma$  and

$$\sigma' = \{ y \in \sigma; \langle m, y \rangle = 0 \} = \sigma \cap m^{\perp}$$

Here are examples when rank N = 2.



**Definition.** A rational partial polyhedral decomposition (r.p.p. decomposition, for short) is a pair  $(N, \Delta)$  consisting of a free  $\mathbb{Z}$ module *N* of finite rank and a collection  $\Delta$  of cones in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  such that (*i*) if  $\Delta \ni \sigma, \sigma > \tau$ ,

then  $\tau \in \Delta$  and (*ii*) if  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$  belong to  $\Delta$ , then the intersection  $\sigma \cap \tau$  is a face of  $\sigma$  as well as of  $\tau.(N, \Delta)$  is called a *finite rational partial polyhedral decomposition*(f. r. p. p. decomposition for short ) if  $\Delta$  is finite.

The relative interiors of  $\sigma \in \Delta$  are disjoint and fill a part of  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$ . When rank  $N = 2, \Delta$  looks like this:



**Definition.** A map  $h : (N, \Delta) \to (N', \Delta')$  between r.p.p. decompositions is a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -homomorphism  $h : N \to N'$  with *finite cokernel* such that for each  $\sigma \in \Delta$ , there exists  $\sigma' \in \Delta'$  with the scalar extension  $h : N_{\mathbb{R}} \to N_{\mathbb{R}'}$ satisfying  $h(\sigma) \subset \sigma'$ . Thus we have the category of r.p.p. decompositions.

**Definition.** A cone  $\sigma$  in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  is called *simplicial* if its fundamental generators  $n_1, \ldots, n_s$  are  $\mathbb{R}$ - linearly independent.  $\sigma$  is called *non-singular* if its fundamental generators form a part of a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis if N.

Given a strongly convex rational polyhedral cone  $\sigma$  in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$ , we denote by  $\check{\sigma}$  its dual in  $M_{\mathbb{R}}$ 

$$\check{\sigma} = \{ x \in M_{\mathbb{R}}; \langle x, y \rangle \ge \text{ for all } y \in \sigma \},\$$

where  $M = N^*$  is the dual of *N*.  $\check{\sigma}$  can be written as the set of  $\mathbb{R}_{\circ}$ -linear combinations of a finite number of elements of *M* and is a convex rational polyhedral cone, although it no longer satisfies the strong convexity  $\check{\sigma} + (-\check{\sigma}) = \{0\}$ . Instead, it satisfies  $\check{\sigma} + (-\check{\sigma})M_{\mathbb{R}}$ . For the general theory

6

convex polyhedral cones, we refer the reader for instance to Grünbaum [13] and Rockafellar [56].

For a subset  $\tau$  of  $\sigma$ , we denote

 $\tau^{\perp} = \Big\{ x \in M_{\mathbb{R}}; \langle x, y \rangle = 0 \text{ for all } y \in \tau \Big\}.$ 

Then  $y \in \sigma$  is in relative interior of  $\sigma$  if and only if  $\check{\sigma} \cap y^{\perp} = \sigma^{\perp}$ , i.e for all  $x \in \check{\sigma}$  not in  $\sigma^{\perp}$ , we have  $\langle x, y \rangle > 0$ 

The following propositions will be useful later.

**Proposition 3.1.** Let  $\sigma$  be a cone in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  and  $\check{\sigma}$  be its dual in  $M_{\mathbb{R}}$ . Then the map

$$\tau \longmapsto \check{\sigma} \cap \tau^{\perp}$$

is na order reversing bijection

$$\{\text{faces of }\sigma\} \xrightarrow{\sim} \{\text{faces of }\check{\sigma}\}.$$

*Proof.* By definition, a face of  $\check{\sigma}$  is of the form  $\check{\sigma} \cap y^{\perp}$  for  $y \in \sigma$ . *y* belongs to the relative interior of a face  $\tau$  of  $\sigma$  if and only if  $\check{\tau} \cap y^{\perp} = \tau^{\perp}$ , i.e.  $\check{\sigma} \cap \tau^{\perp}$ .

**Proposition 3.2.** Let  $\sigma$  be a come in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  and  $\tau$  a face of  $\sigma$ . Then there **9** exists  $x \in \check{\sigma} \cap \tau^{\perp}$  such that

$$\check{\tau} = \check{\sigma} + \tau^{\perp} = \check{\tau} + \mathbb{R}_{\circ}(-x).$$

*Proof.* Since  $\tau$  is a face of  $\sigma$ , there exists  $x \in \check{\sigma}$  such that  $\tau = \sigma \cap x^{\perp}$ . We have inclusions  $\check{\tau} \supset \check{\sigma} + \tau^{\perp} \supset \check{\sigma} + \mathbb{R}_{\circ}(-x)$  of convex polyhedral cones in  $M_{\mathbb{R}}$ . The dual  $\tau$  of the first and the dual  $\sigma \cap \mathbb{R}_{\circ}(-x)^{\vee} = \sigma \cap x^{\perp}$  of the third coincide, and we are done.

**Proposition 3.3.** The correspondence

$$\sigma \longmapsto \check{\sigma} \cap M$$

establishes a bijection between the set of strongly convex rational polyhedral cones in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  and the set of subsemigroups S of M which satisfy the following properties:

- (1)  $S \in 0$  and is finitely generated as a semigroup.
- (2) S generates M as a group.
- (3) S is saturated, i.e. S contains  $m \in M$  if there exists a positive integer a such that  $am \in S$ .

*Proof.*  $\check{\sigma} \cap M$  obviously contains 0 and is a saturated subsemigroup. Since  $\sigma \cap (-\sigma) = \{0\}$  by definition, we have  $\check{\sigma} + (-\sigma) = M_{\mathbb{R}}$ , hence (*ii*). The finite generation of  $\check{\sigma} \cap M$  as a semigroup is what is known as Gordan's lemma and can be proved as follows : We may assume that  $\check{\sigma}$ is of the form  $\mathbb{R}_{\circ}m_1 + \cdots + \mathbb{R}_{\circ}m_s$  for  $\mathbb{R}$ -linearly independent elements  $m_1, \ldots, m_S \in M$ , since general  $\check{\sigma}$  is a finite union of convex cones of this form by Carathoeodry's theorem (see for instance Grünbaum [13]). Let  $M' = M \cap (Qm_1 + \dots + Qm_S)$ . Then  $\check{\sigma} \cap M = \check{\sigma} \cap M'$  and M'' = $\mathbb{Z}m_1 + \cdots + \mathbb{Z}m_s$ , is a submodule of finite index in M'. Since  $\check{\sigma} \cap M' =$  $\mathbb{Z}_{\circ}m_1 + \cdots + \mathbb{Z}_{\circ}m_s$ , we are done. Conversely, let S satisfy (i), (ii) and (iii). By (i), there exist elements  $m_1, \ldots, m_s \in M$  such that  $\mathbb{Z}_{\circ}m_1 + \cdots +$  $\mathbb{Z}_{\circ}m_S$ . Then  $\check{\sigma} = \mathbb{R}_{\circ}m_1 + \cdots + \mathbb{R}_{\circ}m_s$  is a convex rational polyhedral cone in  $M_{\mathscr{R}}$  satisfying  $\check{\sigma} + (-\check{\sigma}) = M_{\mathbb{R}}$ . Hence  $\check{\sigma} = \check{\sigma}$  is a strongly convex rational polyhedral cone. It remains to show that  $S = \check{\sigma} \cap M$ . Again by Caratheodory's theorem, and element in  $\check{\sigma} \cap M$  is a  $Q_{\circ}$  linear combinations of  $m_1, \ldots, m_s$ . Thus a positive integral multiple of it is contained is S. Hence we are done by (iii). 

## 4 First main theorems

For later convenience, we state the first main theorems relating torus embeddings and r.p.p. decompositions in this section, and leave their proofs of §. 5.

The following theorem is slightly more general than those in Demazure [8, §. 4], Mumford et al.[63, I.2, Thm.6] and Miyake-Oda [40].

**Theorem 4.1.** Given k, there exists an equivalence of categories

$$\{ r.p.p.decompositions \} \longrightarrow \begin{cases} normal and separated torus \\ embeddings over k \\ locally of finite type \\ (N, \Delta) \longmapsto T_N \subset T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta) \end{cases}$$

where  $T_N = N \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} k^* = \text{Hom}_{gr}(N^*, k^*)$  and  $T_N emb(\Delta)$  is obtained as the 11 canonical patching of its affince open subsets

Hom<sub>unit.semigr</sub>(
$$\check{\sigma} \cap N^*, k$$
).

Here k is considered as a unitary semigroup under the multiplication and  $T_N$  acts on it by (tx)(m) = t(m)x(m) for  $t \in T_N$ ,  $m \in N^*$  and  $x \in$ Hom<sub>unit.semigr</sub>( $\check{\sigma} \cap N^*, k$ ).

 $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta)$  is of finite type over k if and only if  $\Delta$  is finite.

**Remark.** This down-to-earth description of the functor as well as the simplified proof in §. 5 was pointed out by Ramanan.

**Theorem 4.2.** Let  $(N, \Delta)$  be an r.p.p decomposition.

(i) The map

 $\sigma \mapsto \operatorname{orb}(\sigma) = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(\sigma^{\perp} \cap N^*, k^*)$ 

is a bijection

orb :  $\Delta \xrightarrow{\sim} \{ T_N - orbits in T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta) \},\$ 

such that  $orb(\{0\}) = T_N$  and  $\dim \sigma + \dim orb(\sigma) = \dim T_N$ . Moreover,  $\tau < \sigma$  if and only if the closure of  $orb(\tau)$  contains  $orb(\sigma)$ .

(ii) The map

$$\sigma \longmapsto U(\sigma) = \coprod_{\tau < \sigma} \operatorname{orb}(\tau) = \operatorname{Hom}_{unit.semigr}(\check{\sigma} \cap N^*, k)$$

establishes an order and intersection preserving bijection  $\Delta \xrightarrow{\sim} 12$ { $T_N$ -stable affine open sets in  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta)$ }. In particular,  $T_n \operatorname{emb}(\Delta)$ is affine if and only if  $\Delta$  consists of the faces of a fixed cone in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$ . (iii) For  $\sigma \in \Delta$ , let  $\overline{N}$  be the quotient of N by the subgroup generated by  $\sigma \cap N$ . Then  $T_{\overline{N}} = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(\sigma^{\perp} \cap N^*, k^*)$ . The closure  $\operatorname{orb}(\sigma)$  of  $\operatorname{orb}(\sigma)$  in  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta)$  is normal and

$$\overline{\operatorname{orb}(\sigma)} = \coprod_{\sigma < \tau \in \Delta} \operatorname{orb}(\tau).$$

It coincides with  $T_{\overline{N}} \operatorname{emb}(\Delta)$ , where  $\overline{\Delta}$  is the r.p.p.decomposition of  $\overline{N}_{\mathbb{R}}$  consisting of the images  $\overline{\tau}$  of  $\sigma < \tau \in \Delta$  under  $N_{\mathbb{R}} \to \overline{N}_{\mathbb{R}}$ .

**Theorem 4.3.** Let  $(N, \Delta)$  be an r.p.p.decomposition. Then the corresponding  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta)$  is non-singular if and only if each  $\sigma \in \Delta$  is non-singular, i.e. its fundamental generators of each form a part of a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of N. In this case, the closure of each  $T_N$ -orbit orb  $(\sigma)$  is again non-singular.

**Remark**. When  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta)$  is non-singular, the collection of the sets fundamental generators of  $\sigma$  with running through  $\Delta$  is a "fan" of Demazure [8, §. 4,  $n^{\circ}$ .2].

**Theorem 4.4.** Let  $h : (N, \Delta) \longrightarrow (N', \Delta')$  be a map of r.p.p. decompositions, and let  $f : T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta) \to T_{N'} \operatorname{emb}(\Delta')$  be the corresponding equivariant dominant morphism. Then f is proper if and only if for each  $\sigma' \in \Delta'$  the set  $\{\sigma \in \Delta; h(\sigma) \subset \sigma'\}$  is finite and  $h^{-1}(\sigma')$  is the of its members.

**13** Corollary 4.5. Let  $(N, \Delta)$  be an r.p.p.decomposition. Then  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta)$  is complete (i.e. proper over Spec k), if and only if  $\Delta$  is finite and

$$N_{\mathbb{R}} = \bigcup_{\sigma \in \Delta} \sigma.$$

### **5** The proof of theorems in §.4

In this section, we prove theorems stated in §. 4 in a way slightly different from Mumford et al.[63]. We informally deal with k-valued points only, although, to be rigorous, we should deal with points with values in arbitrary k-algebras.

Here is the *key observations* relating cones and normal affine torus embeddings. We were inspired by Hochster [20].

#### 5. The proof of theorems in §.4

5.1 Let *N* and *M* be mutually dual free  $\mathbb{Z}$ -modules of finite rank with the pairing <, >. Let  $T = T_N = N \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} k^*$ . Then the correspondence

$$\sigma \mapsto U(\sigma) = \operatorname{Hom}_{unit,semigr}(\check{\sigma} \cap M, k^*)$$

is a bijection from the set of (strongly convex rational polyhedral) cones  $\sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$  to the set of *normal affine*  $T_N$ -embeddings (of finite type) over k.

*Proof.* By Proposition 3.3,  $\check{\sigma} \cap M$  is a finitely generated saturated subsemigroup of M which generates M as a group. Thus its semi group algebra  $A = A(\sigma) = \bigoplus_{\substack{m \in \check{\sigma} \cap M}} ke(m)$  is a subalgebra of finite type of the 14 coordinate ring  $k[T] = \bigoplus_{\substack{m \in \check{M}}} ke(m)$  of T. It is T-stable under algebraic representation of T on k[T] defined by  $f(t) \mapsto f(t't)$  for  $f(t) \in k[T]$ and  $t' \in T$ . Since  $\check{\sigma} \cap M$  generates M as a group, the quotient field of A coincides with the quotient field k(T) of k[T]. Since  $\check{\sigma} \cap M$  is saturated, A is integrally closed in k(T). Indeed, the integral closure A' is of finite type over k, hence the representation of T on A' as above is also algebraic. Thus by the complete reducibility theorem, A' has a k-basis consisting of elements of the form e(m') with  $m' \in M$ . e(m') satisfies an equation

$$e(m')^{c} + a_{1}e(m')^{c-1} + \dots + a_{c} = 0$$

with  $a_i$  in A, which we may assume to be a k-multiple of an element  $e(m_i), m_i \in \check{\sigma} \cap M$ . Obviously there exists a non-vanishing  $a_i$ . Then we have  $cm' = m_i + (c - i)m'$ , i.e.  $im' = m_i \in \check{\sigma} \cap M$ , hence  $m' \in \check{\sigma} \cap M$ . A (k-valued) point of  $U(\sigma) =$  Spec A is a k=algebraic homomorphism  $u : A \to K$ , which is determined uniquely by  $u(e(m)) \in k$  for  $m \in M$ , such that u(e(0)) = 1 and u(e(m + m')) = u(e(m))u(e(m')), i.e.,  $u \circ e : M \to K$  is a homomorphism of unitary semigroups. T obviously acts on  $U(\sigma)$  as in the statement of Theorem 4.1. Let  $m_1, \ldots, m_s$  be generators of  $\check{\sigma} \cap M$  as a semigroup. Then M is generates by  $m_1, \ldots, m_s$  and  $-(m_1 + \cdots + m_s)$ . Thus k[T] is the localization of A by  $e(m_1 + \cdots + m_s)$ . Hence  $U(\sigma)$  contains T as an open set.

Conversely, let  $T \subset \text{Spec } A$  be a normal affine *T*-embedding of finite 15

type. Hence *A* is a *k*-subalgebra of finite type of k[T], is normal with the quotient field k(T) and is *T*-stable under the algebraic representations of *T* on k[T] and is *T*-stable under the algebraic representations of *T*. Thus by the complete reducibility, it has a *k*-basis consisting of *T*-semi invariants, i.e.  $A = \bigoplus_{m \in S} ke(m)$  for a finitely generated subsemigroup  $S \ni 0$  of *M*. *S* generates *M* as a group. Indeed, for  $m' \in M$ , the denominator ideal of e(m') is a non-zero *T*-stable ideal of *A*, hence contains some e(m) with  $m \in S$ , and  $e(m)e(m') \in A$ . *S* is obviously saturated, since *A* is integrally closed in k(T). Hence by proposition 3.3, there exists a unique cone  $\sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$  such that  $S = \check{\sigma} \cap M$ .

**Remark.** Non-normal affince  $T_N$ -embedding can also be written as

$$S pec(\bigoplus_{m \in S} ke(m))$$

for a subsemigroup  $S \ni 0$  which generates M as a group. The simplest non-trivial example is the curve Spec  $(k[t^2, t^3])$  with an ordinary cusp. In this case,  $M = \mathbb{Z}$ , and S is generates by 2 and 3. In general, it is difficult to describe such non-saturated S. For the special case of dimension one, we refer the reader to Delorme [7], Herzog [17] and Herzog-Kunz [21].

5.2 Let  $h: N \to N'$  be a homomorphism with finite cokernel and let  $f: T_N \to T'_N$  be the corresponding surjective homomorphism of algebraic tori. Let  $T_N \subset U(\sigma)$  and  $T_{N'} \subset U(\sigma')$  be the normal affine torus embeddings corresponding to cones  $\sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$  and  $\sigma' \subset N'_{\mathbb{R}}$  as in (5.1). Then f can be extended to a unique equivariant dominant morphism  $\overline{f}: U(\sigma) \to U(\sigma')$ , if and only if of the scalar extension  $h: N_{\mathbb{R}} \to N'_{\mathbb{R}}$ 

*Proof.* Let *M* and *M'* be the duals of *N* and *N'*, respectively. Then *h* induces an injection  $h^* : M' \to M$ , which gives rise to  $f : T_N = \text{Hom}_{gr}(M, k^*) \to T_{N'} = \text{Hom}_{gr}(M', k^*)$ . Obviously,  $h(\sigma \leq) \subset \sigma'$  if and only if  $h^*(\check{\sigma}' \cap M') \subset \check{\sigma} \cap M$ , and in this case it induces a morphism  $\bar{f} : U(\sigma) = \text{Hom}_{unit.semigr}(\check{\sigma} \cap M, k) \longrightarrow U(\sigma') = \text{Hom}_{unit.semigr}(\check{\sigma}' \cap M', k)$ .

16

satisfies  $h(\sigma) \subset \sigma'$ .

5.3 Let  $\sigma$  be a cone in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  and let *M* be the dual of *N*. Then the corresponding normal affine  $T_N$ -embedding  $U(\sigma) = \text{Hom}_{unit.semigr}(\check{\sigma} \cap M, k)$ is the disjoint union of  $T_N$ -orbits

$$\operatorname{orb}(\tau) = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(\tau^{\perp} \cap M, k^*)$$

with  $\tau$  running through the faces of  $\sigma$ . The closure of orb  $\tau$  in  $U(\sigma)$  is

$$\operatorname{orb}(\tau) = \operatorname{Hom}_{unit.semigr}(\check{\sigma} \cap \tau^{\perp} \cap M, k)$$

and it is the disjoint union of orb  $\tau'$  with  $\tau'$  running through the faces of  $\sigma$  with  $\tau < \tau'$ .

*Proof.* The following argument, which considerably simplifies our original proof, is due to Ramanan. For simplicity, we denote  $S = \check{\sigma} \cap M$ . Let  $g: S \rightarrow k$  be a unitary semigroup homomorphism, i.e. g(0) = 1 and g(m + m') for  $m, m' \in S$ . Then S is the disjoint union of  $I = g^{-1}(0)$  and  $S' = g^{-1}(k^*)$ . S' is a subsemigroup containing 0 of S and  $S + I \subset I$ . We first show that a decomposition  $S = S' \prod I$  is obtained exactly by taking a face F of  $\check{\sigma}$  and letting  $S' = F \cap M$ . Indeed, if F is a face of  $\check{\sigma}$ , there exists  $y \in \sigma$  such that  $F = \check{\sigma} \subset y^{\perp}$ . Certainly,  $F \cap M$  is a subsemigroup containing 0 of S, and for z and w in S with w not in  $F \cap M$ , z + w is not in  $F \cap M$ . 

Conversely, let S' be a subsemigroup containing 0 of S such that its complement I satisfies  $S + I \subset I$ . Hence  $m \in S$  is in S' of (S + I)m)  $\cap S' \neq \phi$ . Replacing  $\check{\sigma}$  by its smallest face containing S', we may assume that there exists  $m' \in S'$  in the relative interior of  $\check{\sigma}$ . We claim  $(S + m) \cap \mathbb{Z}_{\circ}m' \neq \phi$  for  $m \in S$ , hence  $m \in S'$  by assumption and  $\mathbb{Z}_{\circ}m' \subset S'$ . Indeed, since m' is in the relative interior of  $\check{\sigma}$ , we see that  $\langle m', n_i \rangle > 0$  for the fundamental generators  $n_1, \ldots, n_s$  of  $\sigma$ . Thus  $S + m = \{m'' \in M; < m''n_i > \ge < m, n_i > \text{ for } 1 \le i \le s\}$ . Choose a positive integer a such that a < m',  $n_i \ge m$ ,  $n_i \ge m$ ,  $n_i \ge m$ . Then am' is in S + m.

By proposition 3.1, we know that  $F = \check{\sigma} \cap \tau^{\perp}$  for a unique face  $\tau$ of  $\sigma$ . Thus we see that Hom<sub>unit.semigr</sub> $(\check{\sigma} \cap M, k) = \coprod$  Hom<sub>unit.semigr</sub> $(\check{\sigma} \cap M, k) = \coprod$  $\tau^{\perp} \cap M$ ) generates  $\tau^{\perp} \cap M$  as a group, hence Hom<sub>unit. semigr</sub>( $\check{\sigma} \cap \tau^{\perp} \cap$ 

 $M, k^*$ ) = Hom<sub>gr</sub>( $\tau^{\perp} \cap M, k^*$ ) =  $T_N \cdot \varepsilon(\tau)$ , where  $\varepsilon(\tau)$  is the trivial group homomorphism  $\tau^{\perp} \cap M \to k^*$  sending every element to 1. Let  $A = \bigoplus_{m \in \check{\sigma} \cap M} ke(m)$  and

$$\mathbb{P}(\tau) = \bigoplus_{\substack{m \in \check{\sigma} \cap M \\ m \notin \check{\sigma} \cap \tau^{\perp} \cap M}} ke(m).$$

Then  $\mathbb{P}(\tau)$  is a prime ideal of *A* with the subring  $\bigoplus_{m\in\check{\sigma}\cap\tau^{\perp}M} ke(m)$  isomorphic to  $A/\mathbb{P}(\tau)$ . Hom<sub>unit. simigr</sub> $(\check{\sigma}\cap\tau^{\perp}\cap M, k)$  is obviously the disjoint union of orb  $(\tau')$  with  $\tau'$  running through the faces of  $\sigma$  with  $\tau < \tau'$  and is precisely (the set of *k*-valued points of) the closed set Spec  $(A/\mathbb{P}(\tau))$ .

**Remark.** Let *A* and  $\mathbb{P}(\tau)$  be as above. Then the correspondence

 $\tau \mapsto \mathbb{P}(\tau)$ 

establishes an order preserving bijection

{ faces of  $\sigma$ }  $\xrightarrow{\sim}$  { $T_N$  - stable prime ideals of A}.

 $\mathbb{P}(\sigma)$  is the largest  $T_N$ -stable proper ideal of A. Let  $n_1, \ldots, n_s$  be the fundamental generators of  $\sigma$ , hence  $\mathbb{R}_o n_1, \ldots, \mathbb{R}_o n_s$  are the onedimensional faces of  $\sigma$ . Then  $\mathbb{P}(\mathbb{R}_o n_1), \ldots, \mathbb{P}(\mathbb{R}_o n_s)$  are the  $T_N$ -stable height one prime ideals of A. The localization  $A_{\mathbb{P}(\mathbb{R}_o n_i)}$  is a discrete valuation ring, hence we have a surjective homomorphism  $\operatorname{ord}_i : k(T)^* \to \mathbb{Z}$ , valuation ring onto  $\mathbb{Z}_o$ . Composed with  $e : M \to k(T)^*$ , it gives rise to a surjective homomorphism  $\operatorname{ord}_i \circ e : M \to \mathbb{Z}$ , which is exactly the primitive element  $n_i \in N$ .

19 5.4 Let  $\sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$  be a cone and let  $U(\sigma) = \text{Hom}_{\text{unit.semigr}}(\check{\sigma} \cap M, k)$  be the corresponding normal affine  $T_N$ -embedding. Then the map

$$\tau \longmapsto U(\tau) = Hom_{\text{unit.semigr}}(\check{\tau} \cap M, k)$$

is a bijection

{faces of  $\sigma$ }  $\xrightarrow{\sim}$  { $T_N$  - stable affine open subsets of  $U(\sigma)$ }. Moreover, we have  $U(\tau) = \prod_{\tau' < \tau} \operatorname{orb}(\tau')$ .

#### 5. The proof of theorems in §.4

*Proof.* Let  $A = \bigoplus_{\substack{m \in \check{\sigma} \cap M}} ke(m)$  so that  $U(\sigma) = \operatorname{Spec}(A)$ . If  $\tau$  is a face of  $\sigma$ , there exists, by proposition 3.2, an element  $m_0 \in \check{\sigma} \cap \tau^{\perp} \cap M$  such that  $\check{\tau} \cap M = (\check{\sigma} \cap M) + \mathbb{Z}_{\circ}(-m_0)$ . Hence  $\bigoplus_{\substack{m \in \check{\tau} \cap M \\ m \in \check{\tau} \cap M}} ke(m) = A[e(m_0)^1]$ , whose spectrum  $U(\tau)$  is obviously a  $T_N$ -stable affine open set.  $\Box$ 

Conversely, let spec *B* be a  $T_N$ -stable affine open set of  $U(\sigma)$ . Then by (5.1), There exists a cone  $\tau \subset \sigma$  in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  such that  $\{e(m); m \in \check{\tau} \cap M\}$ form a *k*-basis of *B*. It remains to show that  $\tau$  is a face of  $\sigma$ . The following argument is again due to Ramanan. Replacing  $\sigma$  by its smallest face containing  $\tau$ , we may assume that there exists  $n \in \tau \cap N$  in the relative interior of  $\sigma$ . Then  $\check{\tau} \cap n^{\perp}$  is face of  $\check{\sigma}$  and its intersection with  $\check{\sigma}$  is exactly  $\check{\sigma} \cap n^{\perp} = \sigma^{\perp}$ . Thus the ideal  $\mathbb{P}(\sigma)B$  generated by the prime ideal  $\mathbb{P}(\sigma)$  of *A* is a proper ideal of *B*. Thus orb( $\sigma$ ) = spec( $A/\mathbb{P}(\sigma)$ ) is contained in the  $T_N$ -stable affine open set spec *B*. Since the closure of any  $T_N$ -orbit in  $U(\sigma)$  contains orb( $\sigma$ ) by (5.3), any  $T_N$ -orbit in  $U(\sigma)$ is contained in spec *B* and we are done.  $U(\tau)$  is the disjoint union of orb( $\tau'$ ),  $\tau' < \tau$ , by (5.3).

Combining (5.3) and (5.4), we have the following:

5.5 Let  $\sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$  be a cone and let  $U(\sigma) = \text{Hom}_{\text{unit.semigr}}(\check{\sigma} \cap M, k)$  be the corresponding normal affine  $T_N$ -embedding. Then

$$\tau \mapsto \operatorname{orb}(\tau) = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(\tau^{\perp} \cap M, k^*)$$

is a bijection

orb : {faces of 
$$\sigma$$
}  $\xrightarrow{\sim}$  { $T_N$  – orbits in  $U(\sigma)$ }.

Moreover,

$$\tau \longmapsto U(\tau) = \operatorname{Hom}_{\operatorname{unit.semigr}}(\check{\tau} \cap M, k)$$

is a bijection

{faces of 
$$\sigma$$
}  $\rightarrow$  { $T_N$  – stable affine open subsets of  $U(\sigma)$ }.

For each  $\tau < \sigma$ , they satisfy the following properties :

(i) dim  $\tau$  + dim orb $(\tau)$  = dim  $T_N$ , orb $(\{0\})$  =  $T_N$  and orb $(\sigma)$  is the unique closed orbit of  $U(\sigma)$ .

(ii) 
$$U(\tau) = \prod_{\tau' < \tau} \operatorname{orb}(\tau)$$

(iii) The closure of  $orb(\tau)$  in  $U(\sigma)$  is

$$\overline{\operatorname{orb}(\tau)} = \coprod_{\tau < \tau' < \sigma} \operatorname{orb}(\tau') = \operatorname{Hom}_{\operatorname{unit.semigr}}(\check{\sigma} \cap \tau^{\perp} \cap M, k).$$

It is the normal affine embedding of  $\operatorname{orb}(\tau) = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(t^{\perp} \cap M, k^*)$ corresponding to the image of  $\sigma$  under the map from  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  to its quotient by the subspace  $\sigma + (-\sigma)$  generated by  $\sigma$ .

(iv) The morphism  $\rho_{\tau} : U(\sigma) \to \overline{\operatorname{orb}(\tau)}$  induced by the inclusion  $\check{\sigma} \cap \tau^{\perp} \cap M \hookrightarrow \check{\sigma} \cap M$  is a retraction such that  $U(\tau) = \rho_{\tau}^{-1}(\operatorname{orb}(\tau))$ .

**Remark.** The map orb can also be described as in Mumford et al. [63] as follows : For  $t \in k^*$  and  $n \in N$ , consider the element  $\tau^{\langle ?,n \rangle}$  of  $T_N =$ Hom<sub>gs</sub>( $M, k^*$ ). Let  $U(\tau) =$  Hom<sub>unit. semigr</sub>( $\check{\sigma} \cap M, k$ ) be the normal affine  $T_N$ -embedding. The limit of  $t^{\langle ?,n \rangle}$  as t tends to zero exists in  $U(\sigma)$  if and only if  $\langle m, n \rangle \ge 0$  for all  $m \in \check{\sigma} \cap M$ , i.e.  $n \in \sigma \cap N$ . In that case, the limit is the semigroup homomorphism form  $\check{\sigma} \cap M$  to k sending those m with  $\langle m, n \rangle = 0$  to  $1 \in k$  and those with  $\langle m, n \rangle > 0$  to  $0 \in k$ , i.e. the identity element  $\varepsilon(\tau)$  of  $\operatorname{orb}(\tau) = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(\tau^{\perp} \cap M, k^*)$ , where  $\tau$  is the face of  $\sigma$  containing n in its relative interior, by Proposition 3.1.

5.6 Let  $\sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$  correspond to the normal affine  $T_N$ -embedding  $U(\sigma) = \operatorname{spec} A$ . Let  $\mathbb{P}(\sigma)$  be the largest  $T_N$ -stable proper ideal of A as in the remark after (5.3). Then the following are equivalent:

- (i)  $U(\sigma)$  is non-singular.
- (ii) The local ring  $A_{\mathbb{P}(\sigma)}$  is regular.
- (iii)  $\sigma$  is non-singular, i.e. the fundamental generators of  $\sigma$  form a part of a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of N.

16

*Proof.* (i) obviously implies (ii). Let us assume (ii) and show (iii). Obviously, there exist  $m_1, \ldots, m_s$ ,  $s = \text{height } (\mathbb{P}(\sigma))$ , such that  $\{e(m_1), \ldots, e(m_1), \ldots,$  $e(m_s)$  is a minimal set of generators of the maximal ideal of the local ring. It is easy to see that  $e(m), m \in M$  is contained in the local ring if and only if  $m \in \check{\sigma} \cap M$ . But such m can be written uniquely as  $m = m_0 + a_1 m_1 + \cdots + a_s m_s$  with  $a_i \in \mathbb{Z}_0$  and  $m_0 \in \sigma^{\perp} \cap M$ . Hence 22 a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of  $\sigma^{\perp} \cap M$  together with  $m_1, \ldots, m_s$  form a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of M. Among the dual basis of N, we can choose  $n_1, \ldots, n_s \in \sigma$  such that  $\langle m_i, n_j \rangle = \delta_{ij}$ . Then  $\sigma = \mathbb{R}_o n_1 + \cdots + \mathbb{R}_o n_1$ . It remains to show that (*iii*) implies (*i*). Let the fundamental generators  $n_1, \ldots, n_s$  of  $\sigma$  be extended to a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis  $n_1, \ldots, n_r$  of N. Let  $m_1, \ldots, m_r$  be the dual basis of *M*. Then  $\check{\sigma} \cap M = (\mathbb{Z}_o m_1 + \cdots + \mathbb{Z}_o m_s) + (\mathbb{Z} m_{s+1} + \cdots + \mathbb{Z} m_r)$ , hence  $A = k[u_1, ..., u_r, u_1^{-1}, ..., u_s^{-1}]$  with  $u_i = e(m_i)$ , and spec A is nonsingular. П

5.7 **Proof of Theorem 4.1** Let  $(N, \Delta)$  be an r.p.p.decomposition. Let  $M = N^*$  be the dual of N. For  $\sigma \in \Delta$ , let  $U(\sigma) = \text{Hom}_{\text{unit.semigr}}(\check{\sigma} \cap M, k)$  be the corresponding normal affine open  $T_N$ embedding of finite type. For  $\sigma, \tau \in \Delta, \sigma \cap \tau$  is a face of  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$ . Thus by (5.4),  $U(\sigma \cap \tau)$  is canonically a  $T_N$ -stable affine open set of  $U(\sigma)$  and  $U(\tau)$ . Thus we can paste  $U(\sigma)$ 's together along  $U(\sigma \cap \tau)$  to obtain an irreducible normal scheme  $T_N \text{ emb}(\Delta)$  locally of finite type. Obviously,  $T_N$  acts algebraically on it with the dense orbit  $U(\{0\}) = T_N$ . It is separated, since  $U(\sigma) \cap U(\tau) = U(\sigma \cap \tau)$  is an affine open set and the coordinate ring of  $U(\sigma \cap \tau)$  is generated by those of  $U(\sigma)$  and  $U(\tau)$ . Indeed, they *k*-bases consisting of elements of the form e(m) and  $(\check{\sigma} \cap M) + (\check{\tau} \cap M) = (\sigma \cap \tau)^{\nu} \cap M$ .

A map  $h : (N, \Delta) \to (N', \Delta')$  of r.p.p. decompositions obviously gives rise to an equivariant dormant morphism  $f : T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta) \to T_{N'}$  $\operatorname{emb}(\Delta')$ . On the other hand, suppose f is given. It induces  $h : N \to N'$ . 23 Then for  $\sigma \in \Delta$ , the unique closed  $T_N$ -orbit orb ( $\sigma$ ) of  $U(\sigma)$  is mapped by f to a  $T'_N$ -orbit  $f(\operatorname{orb}(\sigma)) = \operatorname{orb}(\sigma')$  with some  $\sigma' \in \Delta'$ . Hence by (5.5) we have  $f(U(\sigma)) \subset U(\sigma')$ , i.e.  $h(\sigma) \subset \sigma'$  by (5.2).

Let  $T \subset X$  be a normal and separated torus embedding over k. Thus there exists N such that  $T = T_N$ . Consider the collection of T-stable affine open subsets of *X*. Since each of them is a normal affine *T*-embedding of finite type, there exists, by (5.1), a collection  $\Delta$  of cones in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  such that  $\{U(\sigma); \sigma \in \Delta\}$  is the set of *T*-stable affine open subsets of *X*. By Sumihiro's theorem in §. 2,  $U(\sigma)'s$  convex *X*. We now show that  $(N, \Delta)$  is an r.p.p.decomposition. If  $\sigma$  is in  $\Delta$  and  $\tau$  is a face of  $\sigma$ , then  $\tau$  is in  $\Delta$  by (5.4). For  $\sigma$  and  $\tau$  in  $\Delta$ ,  $U(\sigma) \cap U(\tau)$  is a *T*-stable affine open set, hence equals  $U(\rho)$  for a  $\rho \in \Delta$ , since *X* is separated. The coordinate ring of  $U(\rho)$  is generated by those of  $U(\sigma)$  and  $U(\tau)$ . Hence looking at *T*-semiinvariants in them, we see that  $(\check{\sigma} \cap M) + (\check{\tau} \cap M) = \check{\rho} \cap M$ . Thus  $\sigma \cap \tau = \rho$ . Since  $U(\rho)$  is an affine open subset of  $U(\sigma)$  and of  $U(\tau)$ , we have  $\rho < \sigma$  and  $\rho < \tau$ , again by (5.4).

*X* is of finite type over *k* if and only if  $\Delta$  is finite, since each  $U(\sigma)$  has only a finite number of *T*-stable affine open subsets by (5.4)

24 5.8 **Proof of Theorem 4.2:** We first show (*ii*). By the construction of  $T_N \text{ emb } (\Delta)$ , it is covered by  $T_N$ -stable affine open sets  $\{U(\sigma); \sigma \in \Delta\}$ , and  $U(\sigma) \cap U(\tau) = U(\sigma \cap \tau)$ . Hence the map  $\sigma \mapsto U(\sigma)$  is injective. Let U be a  $T_N$ -stable affine open set of  $T_N \text{ emb } (\Delta)$ . Then U is a normal affine  $T_N$ -embedding, hence by (5.1) there exists a unique cone  $\sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$  such that  $U = U(\rho)$ .

Let  $\sigma$  be in  $\Delta$ . Then since  $U(\sigma) \cap U(\rho)$  is affine, it is equal as in (5.7) to  $U(\sigma \cap \rho)$  which is a  $T_N$ -stable affine open set of  $U(\sigma)$  and  $U(\rho)$ . Thus by (5.5), we see that  $U(\rho)$  is covered by  $U(\tau)$  with  $\tau$  running through the elements of  $\Delta$  with  $\tau < \rho$ .

Thus the unique closed orbit orb  $(\rho)$  of  $U(\rho)$  belongs to some  $U(\tau)$  with  $\Delta \ni \tau < \rho$ . On the other hand,  $\rho$  is then a face of  $\tau$  by (5.5), and we are done.

We next show (*i*). For  $\sigma \in \Delta$ , orb $(\sigma)$  is the unique closed orbit of  $U(\sigma)$  by (5.5) (i). On the other hand, each  $T_N$ -orbit of  $T_N$  emb ( $\Delta$ ) is contained in a  $T_N$ -stable affine open set, hence by (5.5) is the unique closed  $T_N$ -orbit of a unique  $\sigma \in \Delta$ .

It remains to show (*iii*). The closure  $\operatorname{orb}(\sigma)$  of  $\operatorname{orb}(\sigma)$  in  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta)$  is the union of its closures in  $U(\tau)$  with  $\tau$  running through the elements of  $\Delta$  with  $\sigma < \tau$ . In particular,  $\operatorname{orb}(\sigma)$  is the disjoint union of  $\operatorname{orb}(\tau)$  with  $\sigma < \tau \in \Delta$  by (5.5) (iii).  $\operatorname{orb}(\sigma)$  is the union of normal affine

embeddings of  $T_N = \text{Hom}_{gr}(\sigma^{\perp} \cap M, k^*)$  corresponding to the image  $\bar{\tau}$  of  $\tau$  under  $N_{\mathbb{R}} \to \bar{N}_{\mathbb{R}}$ , again by (5.5) (iii). The collection  $\bar{\Delta}$  of those  $\bar{\tau}'s$  is obviously an r.p.p.decomposition of  $\bar{N}$ .

5.9 **Proof of Theorem 4.3:** This follows easily from (5.6) and theorem 25 4.2 (iii). Note that if  $\tau$  is non-singular and  $\sigma < \tau$ , then its image  $\overline{\tau}$  under the map from  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  to its quotient  $\overline{N}_{\mathbb{R}}$  by the subspace generated by  $\sigma$  is again non-singular.

5.10 **Proof of Theorem 4.4:** For simplicity, let  $X = T_N emb(\Delta)$  and  $X' = T_N emb(\Delta')$ . By the valuate criterion of properness (see for instance [10] and Mumford [39]),  $f : X \to X'$  is proper if and only if it is of finite type and, moreover, each discrete valuation ring  $R \supset k$  which is contained in the function field k(X) of X and which dominates a local ring of X' necessarily dominates a local ring of X.

Let ord  $:k(X)^* \to \mathbb{Z}$  be the valuation corresponding to *R*. Let us denote by  $n = \text{ord} \circ e$  its composite with  $e : M \to k(X)^*$ .

Hence *n* is an element of *N*. Each non-zero element  $n \in N$  is obtained in this way. *R* dominates a local ring of *X* if and only if it contains the coordinate ring of one of one of the  $T_N$  stable affine open sets, i.e. there exists  $\sigma \in \Delta$  such that  $\langle m, n \rangle \ge 0$  for all  $m \in \check{\sigma} \cap M$ , i.e.  $n \in \sigma$ . Similarly, since  $M' \hookrightarrow M, R$ , dominates a local ring of *X'* if and only if there exists  $\sigma' \in \Delta'$  such that  $n \in \sigma'$ .

*f* is of finite type if and only if for each  $\sigma' \in \Delta'$ , there exist only a finite number of  $U(\sigma)$ 's with  $f(U(\sigma)) \subset U(\sigma')$ , i.e.  $\{\sigma \in \Delta; h(\sigma) \subset (\sigma)'\}$  is finite, by (5.2). The rest of the proof is obvious.

## 6 Projective torus embeddings

For simplicity, we restrict ourselves to complete normal torus embeddings and try to generalize Demazure's results in [8] on the ampleness of invertible sheaves to this case. Mumford et al. [63] deal more generally with T-stable fractional ideals on not necessarily complete Tembeddings. In this section, we fix an f.r.p.p.decompositioon  $(N, \Delta)$  with  $N_{\mathbb{R}} = \bigcup_{\sigma \in \Delta} \sigma$ . Note that  $\Delta$  consists of the faces of the maximal dimensional cones  $\sigma \in \Delta$ , i.e. dim  $\sigma$  = rank *N*. For simplicity, we denote  $T = T_N$  and  $X = T_N emb(\Delta)$ , which is complete and normal. As before, we denote by *M* the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module dual to *N* with the canonical pairing  $\langle , \rangle : M \times N \to \mathbb{Z}$ .

As usual, a Weil divisor D on X is a finite  $\mathbb{Z}$ -linear combination of reduced and irreducible closed subvarieties of codimension one. D gives rise to a fractional ideal  $O_X(D)$ . A Cartier divisor D is a locally principal Weil divisor, which gives rise to an invertible fractional ideal  $O_X(D)$ . We denote by Pic (X) the group of isomorphism classes of invertible sheaves on X, i.e. the group of linear equivalence classes of Cartier divisors on X.

Let the 1-skeleton  $Sk^{1}(\Delta) = \{\sigma_{1}, \dots, \sigma_{d}\}$  be the set of 1-dimensional cones in  $\Delta$ . Let  $n_{i}$  be the fundamental generator of  $\sigma_{i}$ . By Theorem 4.2,  $\{D_{1}, \dots, D_{d}\}$ , where  $D_{i} = \overline{\operatorname{orb}(\sigma_{i})}$ , is the set of *T*-stable irreducible Weil divisors on *X* and forms a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of the group

$$\bigoplus_{1 \le i \le d} \mathbb{Z} D_i$$

of *T*-stable Weil divisors on *X*.

**Proposition 6.1** ((Demazure)). *For a complete normal T-embedding X, we have exact sequences* 

where the first arrows send  $m \in M$  to

$$\operatorname{div}(m) = \sum_{1 \le i \le d} \langle m, n_i \rangle D_i$$

which is the divisor of the character e(m) as a rational function on X

*Proof.* For *m* ∈ *M*, the divisor of the rational function *e*(*m*) on *X* is equal to  $\sum_{1 \le i \le d} \langle m, n_i \rangle D_i$  by the remark after (5.3). This vanishes if and only if *m* = 0, since *X* is complete. For a non-zero rational function *f* on *X*, its divisor on *X* is *T*-stable if and only if *f* is a *T*-semiinvariant. Since *X* −  $\bigcup_{1 \le i \le d} D_i = T$  is factorial, any Weil divisor on *X* is linearly equivalent to a linear combination of  $D'_i s$ 

**Lemma 6.2.** Let  $D = \sum_{1 \le i \le d} a_i D_i$  be a *T*-stable Weil divisor. Then the **28** following are equivalent.

- (i) D is a Cartier divisor.
- (ii) D is principal on each T-stable affine open set  $U(\sigma)$  of X with  $\sigma \in \Delta$ .
- (iii) For all  $\sigma \in \Delta$ , there exists  $m(\sigma) \in M$  such that

$$\langle m(\sigma), n_i \rangle = -a_i$$

for all  $n_i$  contained in  $\sigma$ .

*Proof.* D defines a T-stable fractional ideal  $0_X(D)$  on X. The space of its sections over the affine open set  $U(\sigma)$  has a k-basis consisting of e(m) with m in

$$u(\sigma, D) = \{m \in M; \langle m, n_i \rangle \ge -a_i \text{ for all } n_i \in \sigma\}$$

by the complete reducibility. Thus (*ii*) and (*iii*) are obviously equivalent and imply (*i*). It remains to show (*i*)  $\implies$  (*ii*). Let  $A(\sigma)$  be the coordinate ring of  $U(\sigma)$  and let  $L(\sigma)$  be the  $A(\sigma)$ - module of sections of  $O_X(D)$ over  $U(\sigma)$ . Then, as is well-known (see Cartier [5],  $O_X(D)$  is a Cartier divisor on  $U(\sigma)$  if and only if  $L(\sigma).(A(\sigma) : L(\sigma)) = A(\sigma)$ . In terms of *T*-semi invariants in them, it amounts to

$$u(\sigma, D) + \{m' \in M; m' + \mu(\sigma, D) \in \check{\sigma} \cap m\} = \check{\sigma} \cap M.$$

Since the right hand side contains 0, there exists  $m(\sigma) \in \mu(\sigma, D)$  such that  $-m(\sigma) + u(\sigma, D) \subset \check{\sigma} \cap M$ . We thus conclude that  $\mu(\sigma, D) = m(\sigma) + \check{\sigma} \cap M$ . Hence  $L(\sigma) = A(\sigma) \cdot e(m(\sigma))$ .

**Lemma 6.3.** Let  $D = \sum_{1 \le i \le d} a_i D_i$  be a *T*-stable Weil divisor. The fractional ideal  $O_X(D)$  is generated by its global sections if and only if for all  $\sigma \in \Delta$ , there exists  $m(\sigma) \in M$  such that

$$\langle m(\sigma), n_i \rangle \ge -a_i \qquad for \ 1 \le i \le d$$

with the equality holding if  $n_i \in \sigma$ .

*Proof.* The space of global sections of  $O_X(D)$  has a k-basis consisting of e(m) with m in

$$\lambda(D) = \{ m \in M; \langle m, n_i \rangle \ge -a_i \quad \text{for } 1 \le i \le d \}.$$

The sufficiency is obvious, since  $m(\sigma)$  is in  $\lambda(D)$  and  $\mu(\sigma, D) = m(\sigma) + \check{\sigma} \cap M$ . Let us assume that  $O_X(D)$  is generated by its global sections. Hence, first of all, D is a Cartier divisor. Thus by lemma 6.2, there exists  $m'(\sigma) \in \mu(\sigma, D)$  with  $\langle m'(\sigma), n_i \rangle = -a_i$  for  $n_i \in \sigma$  such that  $\mu(\sigma, D) = m'(\sigma) + \check{\sigma} \cap M$  for each  $\sigma \in \Delta$ . On the other hand  $\mu(\sigma, D) = \lambda(D) + \check{\sigma} \cap M$  by assumption. Hence there exists  $m(\sigma) \in \lambda(D)$  such that  $m'(\sigma, D) = \in m(\sigma) + \check{\sigma} \cap M$  and we are done.

**Theorem 6.4.** Let  $X = Temb(\Delta)$  be a complete normal *T*-embedding, and let  $D = \sum_{1 \le i \le d} a_i D_i$  be a *T*-stable Weil divisor. Then  $O_X(D)$  is an ample invertible sheaf if and only if there exists a positive integer b and, for all maximal dimensional  $\sigma \in \Delta$ , (a unique  $m(\sigma) \in M$ , such that

$$\langle m(\sigma), n_i \rangle \ge -ba_i$$
 for  $1 \le i \le d$ 

with the equality holding if and only if  $n_i$  is in  $\sigma$ .

*Proof.* Let  $O_X(D)$  be ample. Then there exists a positive integer b such that  $O_X(bD)$  is very ample, hence there exists a projective embedding

$$f:X\to \mathbb{P}(\underset{m\in\lambda}{\oplus}ke(m))$$

30 where  $\lambda(bD)$  is as in the proof of Lemma 6.3 and is finite, since X is

complete.  $O_X(bD)$  is generated by its global sections, hence for each  $\sigma \in \Delta$  there exists  $m(\sigma) \in M$  such that  $\langle m(\sigma), n_i \rangle \geq -ba_i$  for  $1 \leq i \leq d$  with the equality holding if  $n_i$  is in  $\sigma$ . If dim  $\sigma$  is maximal, i.e.  $\sigma$  generates  $N_R$ , then such  $m(\sigma)$  is unique. We now show that  $\langle m(\sigma), n_i \rangle - ba_i$  if  $n_i$  is not in a maximal dimensional  $\sigma$ . The restriction of f to the. *T*-stable affine open set  $U(\sigma)$  induces an open immersion of  $U(\sigma)$  into the spectrum of the k-subalgebra  $k[e(m - m(\sigma)); m \in \lambda(bD)] \subset k[T]$ , hence into its normalization, which corresponds by (5.1) to the cone  $\sigma' = \{y \in N_R; \langle m - m(\sigma), y \rangle \geq 0 \text{ for all } m \in \lambda(bD)\}$ . Thus by (5.4),  $\sigma$  is a face of  $\sigma'$ . Since  $\sigma$  is maximal dimensional, we conclude that  $\sigma = \sigma'$ . Hence if  $n_i$  is not in  $\sigma$ , there exists  $m \in \lambda(bD)$  such that  $0 > \langle m - m(\sigma), n_i \rangle$  and we are done.

Let us now prove the sufficiency. Suppose there exists a positive integer *b* and, for each maximal dimensional  $\sigma \in \Delta$ ,  $m(\sigma) \in M$  such that  $\langle m(\sigma), n_i \rangle \ge -ba_i$  for  $1 \le i \le d$  with the equality holding if and only if  $n_i$  is in  $\sigma$ . In particular,  $m(\sigma)$  is in  $\lambda(bD)$ . Thus by Lemma 6.3,  $O_X(bD)$  is generated by its global sections, and there exists a morphism

$$f: X \longrightarrow \mathbb{P}(\bigoplus_{m \in \lambda(bD)} ke(m))$$

For each maximal dimensional  $\sigma \in \Delta$ , let  $V(\sigma)$  be the affine subspace of **31** the projective space whose homogeneous coordinate corresponding to  $m(\sigma)$  does not vanish. To show that *f* is a closed immersion by possibly replacing *b* by its multiple, it is enough to show that

- (i)  $f^{-1}(V(\sigma)) = U(\sigma)$  for all maximal dimensional  $\sigma \in \Delta$ , and
- (ii) for a multiple of b, the restriction  $f|U(\sigma) : U(\sigma) \to V(\sigma)$  is a closed immersion.

For (i), it is enough to show that

$$f^{-1}(V(\sigma)) \cap U(\sigma') = U(\sigma) \cap U(\sigma')$$

for all maximal dimensional  $\sigma' \in \wedge$ , since *X* is covered by those  $U(\sigma')$ 's. The right hand side is contained in the left hand side and equals  $U(\sigma \cap$ 

 $\sigma'$ ) by Theorem 4.2 (ii). The left hand side is the *T*-sable affine open set of  $U(\sigma')$  defined by the non-vanishing of  $e(m(\sigma) - m(\sigma'))$ , thus it corresponds to the face  $\sigma'' = \sigma' \cap (m(\sigma) - m(\sigma'))^{\perp}$  of  $\sigma'$ . Hence we are reduced to showing  $\sigma'' = \sigma \cap \sigma'$ . Both of those are faces of  $\sigma'$ , and  $\sigma \cap \sigma' \subset \sigma''$ . Let  $n_i$  be in  $\sigma'$  but not in  $\sigma$ . Then  $\langle m(\sigma) - m(\sigma'), n_i \rangle > 0$ by assumption, thus  $n_i$  is not in  $\sigma''$ .

It remains to show (*ii*). It is enough to show that as a semigroup  $\check{\sigma} \cap M$  is generated by  $\{m - m(\sigma); m \in \lambda(bD)\}$  by possibly taking a multiple of *b*. Let  $m_1, \ldots, m_s$  be generators of  $\check{\sigma} \cap M$  as a semigroup. Let *b'* be a positive integer. Thus for  $n_i \in \sigma$  and  $1 \leq j \leq s$ , we have  $\langle m_j, n_i \rangle \geq 0$ , hence  $\langle m_j + b'm(\sigma), n_i \rangle \geq -b'ba_i$ . On the other hand, for  $n_i \notin \sigma$  and  $1 \leq j \leq s$ , we have  $\langle m_j + b'm(\sigma), n_i \rangle \geq -b'ba_i$  if *b'* is large enough. Thus  $m_i \in \lambda(b'bD)$  for  $1 \leq j \leq s$  and we are done.

**Remark.** The inequalities in Theorem 6.4 can be interpreted as follows: The convex hull in  $M_{\mathbb{R}}$  of  $\{m(\sigma); \sigma \in \Delta \text{ maximal dimensional }\}$  has exactly *d* facets (i.e. codimension one faces)  $F_1, \ldots, F_d$  perpendicular to  $n_1, \ldots, n_d$ , respectively. Moreover,  $m(\sigma)$ 's are exactly the vertices, and the intersection of  $F_{i_s}$  is the vertex  $m(\sigma)$  if and only if  $n_{i_1}, \ldots, n_{i_s}$ are the fundamental generators of  $\sigma$ .

**Remark.** We refer the reader to Mumford et al. [63] for the interpretation of these inequalities in terms of the "concavity" and the "strict concavity" of certain functions. In our language, they show in Theorem 13, p.48 that even if X is not complete,  $D = \sum_{1 \le i \le d} a_i D_i$  is ample if and only if there exists a positive integer b and, for each  $\sigma \in \Delta$ ,  $m(\sigma) \in M$ such that  $\langle m(\sigma), n_i \rangle \ge -ba_i$  with the equality holding if and only if  $n_i \in \sigma$ .

**Corollary 6.5** (Demazure). Let  $X = \text{temb}(\Delta)$  be a complete nonsingular *T*-embedding, and let  $D = \sum_{1 \le i \le d} a_i D_i$ . Then the following are equivalent .

- (i) D is very ample
- (ii) D is ample.

24
### 6. Projective torus embeddings

33 (iii) For each maximal dimensional  $\sigma \in \Delta$ , the unique element  $m(\sigma) \in M$  defined by

 $\langle m(\sigma), n_i \rangle = -a_i \quad for \ n_i \in \sigma$ 

satisfies

$$\langle m(\sigma), n_i \rangle > -a_i \text{ for } n_i \notin \sigma$$

*Proof.*  $(ii) \Rightarrow (ii)$  is obvious.

(*ii*)  $\Rightarrow$  (*iii*). By Theorem 6.4, there exists a positive integer *b* and, for each maximal dimensional  $\sigma \in \triangle, m'(\sigma) \in M$  such that  $\langle m'(\sigma), n_i \rangle \ge$  $-ba_i$  for  $1 \le i \le d$  with the equality holding if and only if  $n_i \in \sigma$ . Since *X* is non-singular, the fundamental generators of  $\sigma$  form a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of *N*. Hence  $m'(\sigma) = bm(\sigma)$ , where  $m(\sigma)$  is as in (*iii*).

It remains to show (*iii*)  $\Rightarrow$  (*i*). From what we saw in the proof of Theorem 6.4, it is enough to show that for each maximal dimensional  $\sigma \in \Delta, \check{\sigma} \cap M$  is generated as a semigroup by  $\{m - m(\sigma); m \in \lambda(D)\}$ . We may assume that  $n_1, \ldots, n_r$  are the fundamental generators of  $\sigma$ , hence form a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of N. Since X is complete and non-singular, there exists, for each  $1 \le i \le r$ , a maximal dimensional cone  $\sigma_i \in \Delta$  such that the fundamental generators of  $\sigma_i \cap \sigma$  are  $\{n_1, \ldots, i, \ldots, n_r\}$ . Let the remaining fundamental generator of  $\sigma_i$  be  $n_i$ , with r < i' < d. Then  $\langle m(\sigma_i), n_j \rangle \ge -a_j$  with the equality holding if and only if j = i' or  $1 \le j \le r$ . Let  $\{m_1, \ldots, m_r\}$  be the basis of M dual to  $\{n_1, \ldots, n_r\}$ . They generate  $\check{\sigma} \cap M$ . We see that  $m(\sigma) = \sum_{1 \le i \le d} a_j m_j$  and  $m(\sigma_i) - m(\sigma) = 34$  $am_i$ , where  $a = \langle m(\sigma_i) - m(\sigma), n_i \rangle$  is positive by assumption. Since

 $\langle m(\sigma), n_j \rangle \ge -a_j$  for  $1 \le j \le d$ , we see easily that  $\langle m_i + m(\sigma), n_j \rangle \ge -a_j$  for  $1 \le j \le d$ , i.e.  $m_i + m(\sigma) \in \lambda(D)$ .

**Remark.** We show in §. 8 that any 2-dimensional normal torus embedding of finite type is quasi-projective, using Theorem 6.4. On the other hand, there are many are non-projective 3-dimensional complete non-singular torus embeddings, as we see in §. 9.

**Proposition 6.6** (Demazure). Let  $X = \text{temb}(\Delta)$  be a non-singular *T*-embedding. Then the canonical invertible sheaf  $\det(\Omega_X^1)$  equals

$$\omega_X = 0_X(-\sum_{1 \le i \le d} D_i),$$

where  $D_i = \overline{\operatorname{orb}(\sigma_i)}$  and  $Sk^1(\triangle) = \{\sigma_1, \ldots, \sigma_d\}$ .

*Proof.* For each  $\sigma \in \Delta$ , there exists a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis  $\{n_1, \ldots, n_r\}$  of N such that  $n_1, \ldots, n_s$  are the fundamental generators of  $\sigma$ . Let  $\{m_1, \ldots, m_r\}$  be the dual basis of M, and let  $u_i = e(m_i)$ . Then the coordinate ring of  $U(\sigma)$  equals  $k[u_1, \ldots, u_r, 1/u_{s+1}, \ldots, 1/u_r]$ . Consider the rational section

$$\xi = (du_1/u_1) \wedge \ldots \wedge (du_r/u_r)$$

of det( $\Omega_X^1$ ). Its divisor on  $U(\sigma)$  equals  $-\sum_{1 \le i \le s} \overline{\operatorname{orb}(\mathbb{R}_o n_i)}$ . We are done, since for a different  $\mathbb{Z}$ - basis of N, the rational section of det( $\Omega_X^1$ ) defined in this fashion for another affine open set differs from  $\xi$  only by sign.

**35 Remark.** Mumford et al. [63, Thm.9, p.29 and Thm.14, p.52] show that any normal *T*-embedding  $X = \text{temb}(\Delta)$  is Cohen-Macaulay. Moreover, its dualizing sheaf  $\omega_X$  coincides with the double dual of  $\det(\Omega_X^1)$  and equals the fractional ideal associated with the Weil divisor  $-\sum_{1 \le i \le d} D_i$ , where  $D_i = \overline{\operatorname{orb}(\sigma_i)}$  and  $Sk^1(\Delta) = \{\sigma, \ldots, \sigma_d\}$ . (See the end our Introduction for a recent generalization of this result by Ishida.)

**Proposition 6.7.** Let  $temb(\triangle)$  be a complete non-singular torus embedding. For a 1-codimensional cone  $\tau \in \triangle$ , there exist exactly two maximal dimensional cones  $\sigma, \sigma' \in \triangle$  such that  $\tau < \sigma$  and  $\tau < \sigma'$ . Let  $n_1, \ldots, n_{r-1}$  be the fundamental generators of  $\tau$ . Let the additional fundamental generator of  $\sigma(resp. . \sigma')$  be n(resp. . n'). Then there exist  $a_i \in \mathbb{Z}, 1 \le i \le r - 1$  such that

$$n+n'+\sum_{1\le i\le r-1}a_in_i=0$$

Moreover, we have

$$a_i = D_1 \cdots D_i^2 \cdots D_{r-1} \quad 1 \le i \le r-1$$

where  $D_i = \overline{\operatorname{orb}(\mathbb{R}_o n_i)}$ .

*Proof.* Since *X* is complete,  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  is the union of cones in  $\Delta$ . The first assertion, for which the non-singularity is not necessary, is a well-known fact ibn convex geometry. Since. *X* is on-singular,  $\{n, n_1, \ldots, n_{r-1}\}$  and  $\{n', n_1, \ldots, n_{r-1}\}$  are  $\mathbb{Z}$ -bases of *N*. Thus n' is a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -linear combination of  $n, n_1, \ldots, n_{r-1}$  with the coefficient of *n* equals -1, since  $\sigma$  and  $\sigma'$  are **36** on the opposite side of  $\tau$ . As for the assertion, it is enough to restrict ourselves to i = 1. The divisors  $D_i = \overline{\operatorname{orb}}(\mathbb{R}_o n_i)$   $1 \le i \le r - 1$  intersect transversally with the intersection  $\operatorname{orb}(\tau) \cong \mathbb{P}_1$ . Let  $\{m, m_1, \ldots, m_{r-1}\}$  be the basis of *M* dual to  $\{n, n_1, \ldots, n_{r-1}\}$ . Then  $\operatorname{div}(m_1)$  is the sum of  $D_1 + \langle m_1, n' \rangle D'$  and a divisor disjoint from  $\operatorname{orb}(\tau)$ , where  $D' = \overline{\operatorname{orb}}(\mathbb{R}_o n')$ . Since  $\langle m_1, n' \rangle = -a_i$  and D' intersects transversally with  $\operatorname{orb}(\tau)$ , we are done.

# 7 Example of torus embeddings and morphisms

In this section, we give typical examples of torus embeddings and equivariant dominant morphisms. We need some of them later.

7.1 Affine spaces The *r*-dimensional affine space  $\mathbb{A}_r = \underline{\mathbf{k}}^r$  is obviously a  $(\underline{\mathbf{k}}^*)^r$ -embedding. It corresponds to  $(N, \triangle)$ , where  $N \cong \mathbb{Z}^r$  with a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis  $\{n_1, \ldots, n_r\}$  and

$$\Delta = \{ \text{the faces of } \mathbb{R}_o n_1 + \dots + \mathbb{R}_o n_r \}.$$

7.2 More generally for  $0 \le s \le r$ ,  $\underline{\mathbf{k}}^s \times (\underline{\mathbf{k}}^*)^{r-s}$  corresponds to  $(N, \Delta)$  with

$$\Delta = \{ \text{the faces of } \mathbb{R}_{\circ} n_1 + \dots + \mathbb{R}_{\circ} n_s \}$$

7.3  $\underline{k}^r - \{0\}$  is again a  $(\underline{k}^*)^r$  - embedding. It corresponds to  $(N, \Delta)$ , where  $\Delta$  consists of the proper (i.e. not equal to itself) faces of  $\mathbb{R}_{\circ}n_1 + \cdots + \mathbb{R}_{\circ}n_r$ . When r = 2, it looks like this:

## 1. Torus embeddings



7.4 **Projective spaces:** The *r*-dimensional projective space  $\mathbb{P}_r$  is again obviously a  $(\underline{\mathbf{k}}^*)^r$ -embedding. The corresponding  $(N, \Delta)$  is defined as follows :  $N \cong \mathbb{Z}^r$  with a  $\mathbb{Z}$ - basis  $\{n_1, \ldots, n_r\}$ . Let  $n_0 = -(n_1 + \cdots + n_r)$ . Then  $\Delta$  consists of the faces of  $\sigma_0, \ldots, \sigma_r$ , where

$$\sigma_i = \mathbb{R}_{\circ} n_0 + \dots + \bigvee^i + \dots + \mathbb{R}_{\circ} n_r.$$



The canonical morphism  $\underline{k}^{r+1} - \{0\} \to \mathbb{P}_r$  is equivariant and corresponds to the homomorphism  $\tilde{N} \cong \mathbb{Z}^{r+1} \to N$  sending elements of the basis  $\{\tilde{n}_o, \ldots, \tilde{n}_r\}$  of  $\tilde{N}$  to  $\{n_0, \ldots, n_r\}$ .

In this connection, we have the following characterization of the projective space due to Mabuchi [32].

**Theorem 7.1** (Mabuchi). Let X be an r-dimensional complete nonsingular T-embedding. Then the following are equivalent.

**38** (1)  $X \cong \mathbb{P}_r$  equivariantly.

- (2) The tangent bundle  $\theta_X$  of X is ample.
- (3) The normal bundle of each T-stable irreducible divisor (which is non-singular by Theorem 4.3) is an ample invertible sheaf.
- (4) The number of T-fixed points of X (which equals the Euler number of X by Iversen [27]) is exactly r + 1.
- (5) The number of T-stable irreducible divisors is exactly r + 1.
- (6)  $Pic(X) = \mathbb{Z}$ .

Let  $X = T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta)$ . Then (5) means that  $Sk^1(\Delta)$  has r + 1 cones. (4) means that  $\Delta$  has r + 1 maximal dimensional cones.

- (1)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (4)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (5) is easy to show in view of Proposition 6.7.
- (6)  $\Rightarrow$  (5) follows easily from the exact sequence in Proposition 6.1.

(5)  $\Rightarrow$  (6) follows from the exact sequence and the fact that Pix(*X*) is torsion free. (See Demazure [8, p.566]).

 $(1) \Rightarrow (2) \Rightarrow (3)$  is well-known.

(3)  $\Rightarrow$  (4) is due to Mabuchi, who showed (1)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (2)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (3) as a special case of Hartshorne's conjecture [16] (H - r) to the effect that an *r*-dimensional non-singular complete variety with the ample tangent bundle is necessarily  $\mathbb{P}_r$ .

(H-2) is known to be true. (H-3) was proved recently by Mabuchi [32] and Mori-Sumihiro [41].

(6)  $\Rightarrow$  (1) can also be proved directly by means of results in Mori [35], as Sumihiro and Ishida pointed out.

7.5 Products We leave the proof of the following to the reader.

39

**Proposition 7.2.** Let  $(N', \Delta')$  and  $(N'', \Delta'')$  be r.p.p. decompositions. Then we have

 $T_{N'} \operatorname{emb}(\Delta') \times T_{N''} \operatorname{emb}(\Delta'') = T_{N'xN''} \operatorname{emb}(\Delta' \times \Delta'')$ 

where  $\Delta' \times \Delta''$  is the r.p.p.decomposition of  $N' \times N''$  consisting of cones

$$\sigma = \sigma' \times \sigma''$$

with  $\sigma'$  and  $\sigma''$  running through  $\Delta'$  and  $\Delta''$ , respectively.

7.6 Equivariant fiber bundles More generally, we have the following description of equivariant fiber bundles.

**Proposition 7.3.** Let  $h: (N, \Delta) \to (N', \Delta')$  be a map of r.p.p. decompositions, and let  $f: X = T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta) \to X' = T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta')$  be the corresponding equivariant dominant morphism. Consider  $N'' = \ker[h: N \to N']$  and an r.p.p. decomposition  $(N'', \Delta'')$  with  $X'' = T_{N''} \operatorname{emb}(\Delta'')$ . Then  $f: X \to X'$  is an equivariant fiber bundle with the typical fiber X'' if and only if the following conditions are satisfied:

- (i)  $h: N \to N'$  is surjective.
- (ii) There exists a lifting Δ̃' ⊂ Δ of Δ', i.e. (N, Δ̃') is an r.p.p. decomposition and for each σ' ∈ Δ', there exists a unique σ̃' ∈ Δ̃' such that h induces a bijection

$$h: \tilde{\sigma'} \xrightarrow{\sim} \sigma'.$$

40 (iii)  $\triangle$  consists of the cones

$$\sigma = \tilde{\sigma'} + \sigma'' = \{\tilde{y'} + y''; \tilde{y'} \in \tilde{\sigma'}, y'' \in \sigma''\}$$

with  $\tilde{\sigma}'$  and  $\sigma''$  running through  $\tilde{\Delta}'$  and  $\Delta''$ .

Again we leave the proof to the reader. Note that the lifting  $\tilde{\Delta}'$  itself defines an open set of X which is an equivariant  $T_{N''}$ -bundle over  $X' \cdot X$  is associated to it via the  $T_{N''}$ -action on X''.

(7.6') Equivariant  $\mathbb{P}_r$ -bundles: As a special case of (7.6), let  $D'_0, \ldots, D'_r$  be T'-stable Cartier divisors on X' and let  $L'_i = 0_{X'}(D'_i)$ . Then the totally decomposable  $\mathbb{P}_r$ -bundle

$$f: X = \mathbb{P}(L'_0 \oplus \cdots \oplus L'_r) \to X'$$

has a lifting of  $T_{N'}$ -action determined by  $D'_i$ 's Moreover, X has a fiberwise action of  $(\underline{k}^*)^r$  and is a  $T_{N'} \times (\underline{k}^*)^r$ -embedding. A change of Cartier divisors in the linear equivalence classes gives rise to isomorphic torus embeddings.

In terms of r.p.p.decompositions, it can be described as follows: Let  $N'' = \mathbb{Z}^r$  with a  $\mathbb{Z}$ - basis  $\{\ell_1, \ldots, \ell_r\}$ , and let  $N = N' \times N''$ . For each  $0 \le i \le r$  and  $\sigma' \in \Delta'$ , there exists  $m'_i(\sigma') \in M' = (N')^*$  such that the  $A(\sigma')$ -module  $L'_i(U(\sigma'))$  is generated by  $e(m'_i(\sigma'))$ , by Lemma 6.2. Let  $\ell_0 = -(\ell_1 + \cdots + \ell_r)$ , and let  $\tilde{\sigma'}$  be the image of  $\sigma'$  under the linear map  $N'_{\mathbb{R}} \hookrightarrow N_{\mathbb{R}}$  sending y' to  $(y', -\sum_{0\le i\le r} \langle m'_i(\sigma'), y' \rangle \ell_i)$ .

The collection  $\tilde{\Delta'} = \{\tilde{\sigma'}; \sigma' \in \tilde{\Delta'}\}$  forms a lifting of  $\Delta'$  to  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$ . Then **41**  $X = T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta)$ , where  $\Delta$  consists of

$$\sigma = \tilde{\sigma'} + \sigma''$$

with  $\tilde{\sigma'}$  running through  $\tilde{\Delta'}$  and  $\sigma''$  running through  $\Delta'' = \{$ the faces of  $\sigma''_0, \ldots, \sigma''_r \}$ , with  $\sigma''_i = \mathbb{R}_o \ell_0 + \cdots + \bigvee^i + \cdots + \mathbb{R}_o \ell_r$ .

**Example.** Let  $X' = \mathbb{P}_1$  and r = 1. For  $a \in \mathbb{Z}_o$ , consider the rational ruled surface

$$X = \mathbb{P}(0_{\mathbb{P}_1} \oplus 0_{\mathbb{P}_1}(a))$$

which is usually denoted by  $F_a$  or  $\Sigma_a$  and called a Hirzebruch manifold. The corresponding r.p.p.decomposition of  $N = \mathbb{Z}^2$  with a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis  $\{n_1, n_2\}$  looks like this:



**Remark.** When E' is a T'-linearized vector bundle on a T'-embedding X', the bundle  $\mathbb{P}(E')$  has a lifting of T'-action. But it is not a torus embedding unless E' is totally decomposable as above. Nevertheless, it

provides us with a typical example of varieties with torus action which need not be a torus embedding. Thus it is of some interest to classify equivariant vector bundles on torus embeddings. This was partly carried out by Kaneyama [28], who, in particular, showed the existence of equivariant but not homogeneous vector bundles on  $\mathbb{P}_2$ .

7.7 Quotient singularities: The quotient singularities explained by Mumford et all. [63, p.16-19] fit in nicely with our formulation.

Let  $N \cong \mathbb{Z}^r$  be a free  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module of rank r with the  $\mathbb{Z}$  basis  $\{n_1, \ldots, n_r\}$ . Let  $n'_1, \ldots, n'_r \in N$  be primitive elements which are  $\mathbb{R}$ -linearly independent in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$ , and let  $N' \subset N$  be the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -submodule of finite index generated by  $n'_1, \ldots, n'_r$ . Consider the simplicial cone

$$\sigma = \mathbb{R}_o n'_1 + \dots + \mathbb{R}_o n'_r \subset N_{\mathbb{R}} = N'_{\mathbb{R}}.$$

We thus have a map of r.p.p.decompositions  $h : (N', \Delta) \to (N, \Delta)$ , where  $\Delta$  consists of the faces of  $\sigma$ . Hence we have an equivariant surjective morphism

$$f: T_{N'} \operatorname{emb}(\Delta) = \underline{\mathbf{k}}^r \longrightarrow X = T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta),$$

which is the quotient map under the canonical action of the (schemetheoretic) kernel ker[ $f : T_{N'} \to T_N$ ]. When the characteristic of the ground field *k* does not divide the order of N/N', then the kernel is (noncanonically) isomorphic to N/N'. Indeed, let *M* (resp. *M'*) be the  $\mathbb{Z}$ module dual to *N* (resp. *N'*). Then *M* is canonically a submodule of finite index of *M'*, with a pairing

$$\langle,\rangle: M' \times N \longrightarrow \mathbb{Q}$$

which extends the canonical pairings  $M \times N \to \mathbb{Z}$  and  $M' \times N \to \mathbb{Z}$ , and which, moreover, induces a non-degenerate pairing

$$\langle,\rangle: (M'/M) \times (N/N') \longrightarrow \mathbb{Q}/\mathbb{Z}$$

Then ker[ $f : T_{N'} \to T_N$ ] = Hom<sub>gr</sub>( $M'/M, k^*$ ), which is (non-canonically) isomorphic to N/N' via the above pairing.

32

## 7. Example of torus embeddings and morphisms

For instance, let r = 2. We may choose a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis  $\{n_1, n_2\}$  of N so that

$$n_1' = n_1$$
$$n_2' = an_1 + bn_2$$

where a,  $b \in \mathbb{Z}$  with (a, b) = 1 and  $0 \le a < b$ . Then the action of ker[ $f : T_{N'} \to T_N$ ] on  $\underline{k}^2$  coincides with the action of  $\mathbb{Z}/b\mathbb{Z}$  on  $\underline{k}^2$  with the generator acting via

$$\underline{\mathbf{k}}^2 \ni (z, w) \longmapsto (\zeta^{-a} z, \zeta w) \in \underline{\mathbf{k}}^2,$$

where  $\zeta$  is a primitive *b*-th root of 1 and  $z = e(m'_1)$ ,  $w = e(m'_2)$  with  $\{m'_1, m'_2\}$  the basis of M' dual to  $\{n'_1, n'_2\}$ .



7.8 Equivariant blowing up: The maps of the form  $h : (N, \Delta' \to (N, \Delta))$  give rise to equivariant birational morphisms f of the corresponding torus embeddings. Obviously, f is an open immersion if and only if  $\Delta' \subset \Delta$ .

The most interesting case is when  $\Delta'$  is a *subdivision* of  $\Delta$ . It was shown by Mumford et all. [63, Thm.10, p.31] that is this case, f is the normalization of the blowing up along a *T*-stable fractional ideal.

They show [ibid., Thm.11, p.32] that given  $\Delta$ , there always exists a subdivision  $\Delta'$  which is non-singular, i.e. any torus embedding has an *equivariant resolution of singularities*.

The *minimal resolution* of singularities of a 2-dimensional normal torus embedding can be described very simply as in [ibid., p.35-40]. Note that the singularities in this case are isolated, and the blowing up an isolated singular point is automatically normal, although its description in terms of r.p.p. decompositions is rather complicated and closely related to continued fractions. In this connection, we refer the reader also to Gonzalez-Sprinberg [12], who dealt with *Nash transforms* of 2-dimensional normal torus embeddings

We need later the following description of a blowing up in the nonsingular case.

**Proposition 7.4.** Let  $T \subset X$  be a non-singular torus embedding corresponding to an r.p.p.decompositon  $(N, \Delta)$ . For  $\sigma \in \Delta$ , the blowing up of X along the T-stable non-singular closed subvariety  $orb(\sigma)$  is a non-singular T-embedding corresponding to the subdivision  $(N, \Delta^*)$  obtained from  $\Delta$  by "starring at its barycenter" as follows: Let  $n_1, \ldots, n_s$  be the fundamental generators of  $\sigma$ , and let  $n_0 = n_1 + \cdots + n_s$  be the "barycenter". For  $\Delta \ni \tau > \sigma$  and  $1 \le i \le s$ . Let  $\tau_i \subset N_R$  be the cone obtained from  $\tau$  by replacing one of its fundamental generators  $n_i$  by  $n_0$ 

and leaving the other generators as they are.

Then

44

$$\Delta^* = (\Delta - \{\tau \in \Delta; \tau > \sigma\}) \cup (\bigcup_{\sigma < \tau \in \Delta} \{ \text{ the faces of } \tau_i; 1 \le i \le s\}).$$

*Proof.*  $\overline{orb(\sigma)}$  is non-singular by Theorem 4.3. Obviously it is enough to describe the blowing up on the affine open set  $U(\tau)$  with  $U(\tau) \cap \overline{orb(\sigma)} \neq \mathbb{Q}$ , i.e.  $\sigma < \tau \in \Delta$  by Theorem 4.2. Let  $n_1, \ldots, n_s$ , with  $s \leq s'$ be the fundamental generators of  $\tau$ . Since  $\tau$  is non-singular, they can be extended to a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis  $\{n_1, \ldots, n_r\}$  of N. Let  $\{m_1, \ldots, m_r\}$  be the dual basis of  $M = N^*$ , and let  $u_i = e(m_i)$ . Then the coordinate ring A of  $U(\tau)$  is the localization  $A = k[u_1, \ldots, u_r]_{u_{s'+1} \cdots u_r}$  and the ideal of  $\overline{orb(\sigma)} \cap U(\tau)$ is generated by  $u_1, \ldots, u_s$ . For  $1 \leq i \leq s$ , let  $A_i = A[u_1/u_i, \ldots, u_r/u_i]$ . Then the inverse image of  $U(\sigma)$  in the blowing up is covered by Spec  $A_i$  with  $1 \leq i \leq s$ . Obviously, Spec  $A_i$  is a normal affine T-embedding corresponding to the cone  $\tau_i = \mathbb{R}_o n_0 + \sum_{\substack{1 \leq j \leq s' \\ i \neq i}} \mathbb{R}_o n_j$ .

**Corollary 7.5.** Let  $T \,\subset X$  be a 2-dimensional non-singular torus embedding corresponding to an r.p.p.decomposition  $(N, \Delta)$ . For a 2 dimensional cone  $\sigma = \mathbb{R}_o n_1 + \mathbb{R}_o n_2$ , the blowing up of X along the T-fixed point  $ord(\sigma)$  is a non-singular T-embedding corresponding to  $(N, \Delta^*)$ , where  $\Delta^*$  is obtained from  $\Delta$  by removing  $\sigma$  and adding the faces of  $\sigma_1 = \mathbb{R}_o(n_1 + n_2) + \mathbb{R}_o n_2$  and  $\sigma_2 = \mathbb{R}_o n_1 + \mathbb{R}_o(n_1 + n_2)$ .



**Corollary 7.6.** Let  $T \subset X$  be a 3-dimensional non-singular torus embedding corresponding to an r.p.p.decomposition  $(N, \Delta)$ .

(i) For a 3-dimensional cone  $\sigma = \mathbb{R}_o n_1 + \mathbb{R}_o n_2 + \mathbb{R}_o n_3$ , the blowing up of X along the T-fixed point  $\operatorname{orb}(\sigma)$  is a nonsingular T-embedding corresponding to  $(N, \Delta^*)$ , where  $\Delta^*$  is obtained from  $\Delta$  by removing  $\sigma$ and adding the faces of  $\sigma_1, \sigma_2$  and  $\sigma_3$  as in the picture below.

(ii) For a 2-dimensional cone  $\sigma = \mathbb{R}_o n_1 + \mathbb{R}_o n_2$ , let  $\tau = \mathbb{R}_o n_1 + \mathbb{R}_o n_2 + \mathbb{R}_o n_3$  and  $\tau' = \mathbb{R}_o n_1 + \mathbb{R}_o n_2 + \mathbb{R}_o n_4$  be the 3-dimensional cones in  $\Delta$  having  $\sigma$  as a face (cf. Prop.6.7). Then the blowing up of X along the T-stable curve  $\overline{orb}(\sigma)$  is a non singular T-embedding corresponding to  $(N, \Delta^*)$ , where  $\Delta^*$  is obtained from  $\Delta$  by removing  $\sigma, \tau, \tau'$  and adding the faces of  $\tau_1, \tau_2, \tau'_1, \tau'_2$  as in the picture below.



47 7.9 Algebraic varieties of monomial type: As Mumford et al. [63] pointed out in the it introduction the theorem of torus embeddings is

a unified and globalized treatment of the "exponents of monomials". It can be said that when we have algebraic varieties or morphisms defined in terms of monomials only, then there is a possibility of formulating them more transparently in terms of torus embeddings. We encounter many examples in Chapter 2. Here is a motivating example:

Let  $\overline{X} \subset \mathbb{A}_r = \underline{k}^r$  be a closed algebraic set defined polynomials  $f_1(t), \ldots, f_v(t) \in k[t_1, \ldots, t_r]$ , each of which is of the form

$$f(t) = t_1^{a_1} t_2^{a_r} \cdots t_r^{a_r} - t_1^{b_1} t_2^{b_r} \cdots t_r^{b_r}$$

with non-singular integers  $a_1, \ldots, a_r, b_1, \ldots, b_r$ . Then  $\bar{X}$  is invariant the coordinatewise multiplication of elements of the group

$$\bar{T} = \bar{X} \cap (\underline{\mathbf{k}}^*)^r,$$

This  $\overline{T}$  is an algebraic subgroup of  $(\underline{k}^*)^r$  but may not be an algebraic torus. It may neither be connected nor reduced. But when  $\overline{T}$  is an algebraic torus, then  $\overline{X}$  is a  $\overline{T}$ -embedding, although it may not be normal in general. Consider, for instance the rational curve with a cusp

$$\bar{X} = \{(t_1, t_2) \in \mathbb{A}_2; t_2^2 = t_1^3\}.$$

We have analogues in  $\mathbb{P}_r$  or its generalization in Mori [34]

Here is a more general formulation in the affine case Let  $M \cong \mathbb{Z}^r$  and 48 let  $0 \in S$  be a finitely generated sub semigroup of M which generates M as a group. Hence

$$X = \operatorname{Hom}_{u.s.g}(S, \underline{k})$$

is a T-embedding with

$$T = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(M, \underline{\mathbf{k}}^*).$$

Let  $m_1, \ldots, m_{\nu}, m'_1, \ldots, m'_{\nu} \in S$ . Then consider the quotient

 $\overline{M} = M/$  (the subgroup  $gen^{\underline{d}}$  by  $m_1 - m'_1, \ldots, m_{\nu} - m'_{\nu}$ ) and the image  $\overline{S}$  of S under the canonical projection  $M \to \overline{M}$ . Then  $\overline{S}$  is the quotient of S with respect to the equivalent relation

$$s \sim s' \Leftrightarrow \exists s'' \in S, a_1, \dots, a_{\nu}, b_1, \dots, b_{\nu} \in \mathbb{Z}_o$$
 such that

1. Torus embeddings

$$s = s'' + \Sigma a_i m_i + \Sigma b_i m'_i$$
  
$$s' = s'' + \Sigma b_i m_i + \Sigma a_i m'_i$$

Let

$$\bar{T} = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(\bar{M}, \underline{k}^*) \subset T \quad \text{algebraic subgroup} \\ \bar{X} = \operatorname{Hom}_{u.s.g}(\bar{S}, \underline{k}) \subset X \quad \text{closed algebraic set.}$$

Then  $\bar{X}$  contains  $\bar{T}$  as a dense open subset and is invariant under  $\bar{T}$ . If  $m_1 - m'_1, \ldots, m_v - m'_v$  generates a pure subgroup of M, then  $\bar{T}$  is an algebraic torus and  $\bar{X}$  is a  $\bar{T}$ -embedding. If, moreover,  $S = \check{\sigma} \cap M$  for a cone  $\sigma \subset N_{\mathbb{R}}$  as in (5.1), then the *normalization* of  $\bar{X}$  corresponds to the cone  $\sigma \cap \bar{N}_{\mathbb{R}}$ , where  $\bar{N} = N \cap \{m_1 - m'_1, \ldots, m_v - m'_v\}^{\perp}$ .

# **8** Torus embeddings of dimension $\leq 2$

49

It is easy to see that 1-dimensional normal torus embeddings are  $\underline{k}^*$ ,  $\mathbb{A}_1 = \underline{k}$  and  $\mathbb{P}_1$ , up to isomorphism.

From now in this section, Let  $N \cong \mathbb{Z}^2$  and  $T = T_N$ . A 2-dimensional normal *T*-embedding of finite type looks like this:



In particular, a complete normal 2 dimensional *T*-embedding is determine by a finite cycle of primitive elements  $n_1, \ldots, n_d$  in *N* going counterclockwise once around 0 in the given order such that det  $(n_i, n_{i+1}) > 0$  for  $1 \le i \le d$   $(n_{d+1} = n_1)$ , i.e.  $n_{i+1}$  lies strictly before  $-n_i$  (which may not belong to the cycle).



**Proposition 8.1.** Any 2-dimensional normal torus embedding  $T \subset X$  50 of finite is quasi-projective, i.e. can be equivariantly embedded into a projective space.

*Proof.* Let  $X = \text{Temb}(\Delta)$ . By filling in the complement  $N_{\mathbb{R}} - \bigcup_{\sigma \in \Delta} \sigma$  by appropriate cones if necessary, we can embed X equivariantly into a complete normal T-embedding. (For the existence of equivariant completions in general, we refer the reader to Sumihiro [59].) We may thus assume that X itself is complete. Let  $n_1, \ldots n_d$  be the fundamental generators of the 1-dimensional cones in  $\Delta$  arranged, as above, in such a way that they go around 0 counterclockwise once in this order. By Theorem 6.4, X is projective if and only if there exists a unique  $m(\sigma) \in M$  with  $\langle (\sigma), n_i \rangle \geq -a_i$   $1 \leq i \leq d$  and with the equality holding if and any if  $n_i \in \sigma$ . As we remarked after the proof of Theorem 6.4, this means that the convex hull of

$$\{M(\sigma) : \Delta \ni \sigma \text{ 2-dimensional}\}$$

in  $M_{\mathbb{R}}$  has exactly *d* edges  $F_1, \ldots, F_d$  going around 0 in this order with  $F_i$  perpendicular to  $n_i$ .

It is thus enough to show, by induction on d, the existence of a convex polygon P in  $M_{\mathbb{R}}$  with the vertices in  $M_{\mathbb{Q}}$  such that it has exactly d edges  $F_1, \ldots, F_d$  going around 0 in this order with  $F_i$  perpendicular to  $n_i$ 

Obviously  $d \ge 3$  and the case d = 3 is trivial. If  $d \ge 4$ , there 51 certainly exists  $n_d$ , say, such that the cycle  $n_1, \ldots, n_{d-1}$  still defines an *f.r.p.p.* decomposition. Let P' be a polygon with d - 1 edges

 $F'_1, \ldots, F'_{d-1}$  satisfying the required property. At the vertex of P' which is the intersection of edges  $F'_1$  and  $F'_{d-1}$ , we can cut the corner by a line perpendicular to  $n_d$  and obtain a required P with d edges.



A complete non-singular 2-dimensional *T*-embedding is determined by a cycle of elements  $n_1, \ldots, n_d \in N$  as above with

$$\det(n_i, n_{i+1}) = 1 \quad 1 \le i \le d.$$

This condition is rigid enough to allow a complete classification.

**Theorem 8.2.** Up to isomorphism, a complete non-singular 2 - dimensional *T*-embedding is obtained from

$$\mathbb{P}_2 \text{ or } F_a = \mathbb{P}(0_{\mathbb{P}_1} \oplus 0_{\mathbb{P}_1}(a)) \qquad 1 \neq a \ge 0$$

by a finite succession of blowing ups along T-fixed points. It can be transformed to  $\mathbb{P}_2$  by a finite succession of blowing ups and blowing downs along T-fixed points. Given non-singular T-embeddings X and X', there exists X'' obtained both from X and from X' by a finite succession of blowing ups along T-fixed points.

*Proof.* Let *X* =Temb ( $\Delta$ ) with  $\Delta$  determined by a cycle  $n_1, \ldots, n_d \in N$  going around 0 once counterclockwise. Certainly  $d \ge 3$ . If d = 3, then  $n_1 + n_2 + n_3 = 0$  and  $X = \mathbb{P}_2$  (cf. Theorem 7.1). We may thus assume  $d \ge 4$ .

**Lemma 8.3.** If  $d \ge 4$ , there exist i and j with  $n_i + n_j = 0$ .

**Sublemma 8.4.** Let  $\{n, n'\}$  and  $\{\ell, \ell'\}$  be  $\mathbb{Z}$ -bases of N. If  $\ell$  lies in the interior of the sector  $\mathbb{R}_o n + \mathbb{R}_o n'$  and if  $\ell'$  is in the sector  $\mathbb{R}_o n' + \mathbb{R}_o (-n)$ , then  $\ell' = n'$  or  $\ell' = -n$ .



**Proof of the sublemma:** By assumption, there exist positive integers a, a' such that  $\ell = an + a'n'$  and non-negative integers b, b' such that  $\ell' = -bn + b'n'$ . We are done, since  $1 = \det(\ell, \ell') = ab' + a'b$  by assumption.

**Proof of the lemma:** Suppose the assertion of the lemma is false. By re-numbering the primitive elements if necessary, we may assume that starting counterclockwise from  $n_1$ , we have more than half of the primitive elements before  $-n_1$ , which does not coincide with any of the  $n'_is$  by assumption. Let  $n_j(j > 2)$  be the last primitive element before  $-n_1$ . Since  $n_{j+1}$  does not coincide with  $-n_1$  and  $-n_2$ , we see by sublemma 8.4 and the convexity that  $n_{j+1}$  is is strictly between  $-n_2$  and  $-n_j$ . Thus we conclude that  $n_2, n_3, \ldots, n_j$  and  $-n_{j+1}, -n_{j+2}, \ldots, -n_d, -n_1$  are all different and lie between  $n_2$  and  $-n_1$ .



This is obviously a contradiction in view of Sublemma 8.4.

**Proof of Theorem 8.2 continued:** By Lemma 8.3, we may assume that  $n_d + n_i = 0$  for some *i*. Let  $n' = -n_d = n_i$  and  $n = n_1$ . Thus  $\{n, n'\}$  is a basis of *N*.

If d = 4, we see that  $n_2 = n'$  and  $n_3 = -n + an'$  for some integer a. This gives rise to  $X = F_a$ . By symmetry, we may assume that  $a \ge 0$ . If a = 1, n' is the sum of the adjacent primitive elements, hence by blowing down we can eliminate n'.

Thus we may assume  $d \ge 5$  and at least one primitive element lies between  $n = n_1$  and  $n' = n_i$ . It remains to show that



54

there exists 1 < j < i such that  $n_j = n_{j-1} + n_{j+1}$ . For each  $1 \le j \le i$ , there exist non -negative integers  $b_j, b'_j$  with  $n_j = b_j n + b'_j n$ . On the other hand for each *j*, there exists an integer  $a_j$  such that  $n_{j-1} + n_{j+1} + a_j n_j = 0$  by Proposition 6.7. Obviously  $a_j < 0$ . Consider the function

$$c(j) = b_j + b'_j > 0.$$

Then  $c(j-1)+c(j+1)+a_jc(j) = 0$ . Moreover, since c(1) = c(i) = 1, there exists *j* so that c(j) > c(j+1) and  $c(j) \ge c(j-1)$ . For this *j*, we have  $(2 + a_j)c(j) > 0$  and conclude  $a_j = -1$ . This means that if  $d \ge 5$ , we can successively blow *X* down to some  $F_a$ . (cf. the Farey series in additive number theory.)

This fact can also be proved sing Nagata's classification [42] of relatively minimal models of rational surfaces. Note that an exceptional curve of the first kind is automatically T-stable, hence the blowing down is equivariant.

### 8. Torus embeddings of dimension $\leq 2$

As for the second assertion of Theorem 8.2, we may assume  $X = F_a$ . If we insert the sum of -n + an' and -n' between them, then -n + an' is the sum of -n + (a - 1)n' and n'.



This means that by blowing up a long a *T*-fixed point of  $F_a$  and then 55 blowing down a *T*-stable curve, we get  $F_{a-1}$ . This process is usually called an *elementary transformation* of a ruled surface. By a finite repetition of this process, we transform  $F_a$  to  $F_1$ , which can be blown down to  $\mathbb{P}_2$ .

The last assertion of Theorem 8.2 follows easily from the decomposability of birational morphisms of non-singular surfaces into blowing ups along closed points. But it can also be proved in terms of r.p.p.decompositions as follows: Let  $X = \text{Temb} (\Delta)$  and  $X' = \text{Temb} (\Delta')$ . Then the decomposition of  $N_R$  obtained by the intersections  $\sigma \cap \sigma'$ with  $\sigma \in \Delta$  and  $\sigma' \in \Delta$  need not be non singular, but it has a non singular subdivision  $\Delta''$ . Thus it is enough to show that a non singular subdivision  $\Delta''$  of a non-singular  $\Delta$  is obtained by finite succession of operations in Corollary 7.5. This can be seen exactly as in the last part of the proof of the first assertion.

Let us now derive certain consequences from Theorem 8.2 which 56 we need in the next section and which are also of independent interest.

Let a cycle  $n_1, \ldots, n_d$  of primitive elements in N determine a complete non-singular 2- dimensional torus embedding X =Temb ( $\Delta$ ). Let

 $D_i = \overline{\operatorname{orb}(\mathbb{R}_o n_i)}$ . Then by Proposition 6.7, we have

$$n_{i-1} + n_{i+1} + a_i n_i = 0 \quad 1 \le i \le d$$

and

57

$$a_i = D_i^2$$
.

Thus we have a cycle  $D_1, \ldots, D_d$  of non-singular rational curves, which can be expressed, as usual, by a circular graph with weights  $a_i$ . Note that this weighted circular graph determines the 2-dimensional *T*-embedding *X* up to isomorphism.



The cycle  $a_1, \ldots, a_d$  of integers cannot be arbitrary. For instance, we have the following necessary but not sufficient condition as a consequence of Noether's formula  $K^2 + c_2 = 12$  and  $c_2 = d$  (cf. Iversen[I6]):

$$a_1+\cdots+a_d=3(4-d).$$

We have the following characterization as a consequence of Theorem 8.2.

**Corollary 8.5.** A weighted circular graph with d vertices corresponds to a 2-dimensional complete non-singular torus embedding if and only if it is obtained from those with d = 3 or d = 4 below by a successive application of the following operation: insert one vertex with weight -1 and subtract 1 from the weights of the two adjacent vertices. For  $d \le 6$ , we have the following possible cases.



**Remark.** A 2-dimensional complete non-singular torus embedding can be considered as a compactification of  $\underline{k}^2$ , the affine plane, in many different ways. The graph obtained from the corresponding wighted circular graph by removing two adjacent vertices is the graph of the complement of  $\underline{k}^2$ . cf. Morrow [37].

# 9 Complete non-singular torus embeddings in dimension 3

In this section, we give a partial classification of 3-dimensional complete non-singular torus embeddings. As by-products we get many nonprojective complete non singular threefolds and birational morphisms which cannot be written as a succession of blowing ups along nonsingular centers. These are of some independent interest even if the torus action is ignored.

Torus embeddings provides us with a good testing ground for the birational geometry of non-singular varieties, since many questions are reduced to the elementary geometry of r.p.p.decompositions. Consider, for instance, the following basic question. By abuse of language, a blowing up  $Y \rightarrow X$  along a non-singular center of X is also called a *blowing down of Y along a non-singular center*.

**Question:** Let *X* and *X'* be birational non-singular algebraic varieties.

(strong version) Does there exist X'' which can be obtained both from X and from X' by a finite succession of blowing ups along non-singular centers?

(weak version) Can X' be obtained from X by a finite succession of blowing ups and blowing along non-singular centers?

60

The answer is affirmative dimension 2, but is not known even in dimension 3. According to Hironaka [18], we have the following weaker affirmative answer in characteristic 0: There exists X'' obtained from X by a finite succession of blowing ups along non-singular centers such that there exists a *morphism* from X'' to X'.

In the case of torus embeddings, the question is completely reduced to one on non-singular r.p.p.decompositions and looks much easier. Nevertheless, we were unable to prove the following conjecture even in dimension 3. We have already shown in Theorem 8.2 that the conjecture is true in dimension 2.

## Conjecture

(strong version) Let X and X' be non-singular T-embeddings. Then there exists a T-embedding X'' obtained both from X and from X' by a finite succession of T-equivariant blowing ups along T-stable nonsingular centers.

(weak version) Any complete non-singular *r*-dimensional torus embedding is obtained from  $\mathbb{P}_r$  by a finite succession of equivariant blowing ups and blowing downs along non-singular centers.

From now on, we fix  $N \cong \mathbb{Z}^3$  and the ground field *k*.

Let  $T = T_N$ .

The classification of 3-dimensional complete non-singular T - embeddings X is reduced to that of f.r.p.p.decompositions  $\Delta$  of  $N_{\mathbb{R}} \cong \mathbb{R}^3$  such that  $N_{\mathbb{R}} = \bigcup_{\sigma \in \Delta} \sigma$  and that the fundamental generators of each 3-dimensional  $\sigma \in \Delta$  form a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of N.

It is slightly more complicated to describe such  $\Delta$  in a computable way than in the 2-dimensional case.

**Definition**. Let  $S = S^2$  be a sphere in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  centered at 0. Consider a triangulation of S by spherical triangles.

(*i*) By an N-weighting of the triangulation. we mean a primitive element of N attached to each spherical vertex.

(*ii*) By a *double*  $\mathbb{Z}$ -*weighting* of the triangulation, we mean a pair of integers attached to each spherical edge with one integer on the side of one vertex and with the other on the side of the other vertex. Let  $v_1, \ldots, v_s$  be the vertices adjacent to a vertex v of the triangulation, and let  $a_i$  be the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weight on the edge  $vv_i$  which is on the side of  $v_i$ . The *weighted link* of v is the spherical polygon  $v_1v_2 \cdots v_sv_1$  together with weights  $a_i$  at  $v_i$ .



Let  $X = \text{Temb}(\Delta)$  be a 3-dimensional complete non-singular torus 62 embedding. If we intersect  $\Delta$  with a sphere  $S \subset N_R$  centered at 0, we get a triangulation of S

$$S = \bigcup_{\sigma \in \Delta} (\sigma \cap S).$$

We have a canonical N-weighting for this triangulation. Indeed, each

spherical vertex is of the form

$$(\mathbb{R}_{\circ}n) \cap S$$

for a primitive  $n \in N$ , which we attach to the vertex. Obviously,  $\Delta$  is determined completely by this *N*-weighted triangulation of *S*.

**Definition.** An *N*-weighted triangulation of  $S^2$  is *admissible* if it is obtained from a complete non-singular  $X = \text{Temb}(\Delta)$  in this way.

The admissibility means the following : For each spherical triangle, the *N*-weights  $\{n, n', n''\}$  at the three vertices from a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of *N* and the cone  $\mathbb{R}_{\circ}n + \mathbb{R}_{\circ}n' + \mathbb{R}_{\circ}n''$  cuts out the original triangle on *S*.

On the other hand, an admissible *N*-weighting for a triangulation of *S* gives rise to a double  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weighting. Indeed, each spherical edge is of the form

 $\tau \cap S$ 

for a 2-dimensional cone  $\tau \in \Delta$ . Let  $\{n_1, n_2\}$  be the fundamental generators of  $\tau$ . By Proposition 6.7,  $\tau$  is the common fact of exactly two 3-dimensional cones  $\sigma$  and  $\sigma'$ . Let  $\{n, n_1, n_2\}$  and  $\{n', n_1, n_2\}$  be the fundamental generators of  $\sigma$  and  $\sigma'$ , respectively. There exist  $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$  such that

$$(*)n + n' + an_1 + bn_2 = 0.$$

We attach a pair (a, b) to the edge  $\tau \cap S$ , with a on the side of  $(\mathbb{R}_o n_1) \cap S$ and *b* on the side of  $(\mathbb{R}_o n_2) \cap S$ .



48

In this case, consider a vertex v with N-weight n and its link with the vertices  $v_1, \ldots, v_s$  with N-weights  $n_1, \ldots, n_s$  going around v in this order. Let  $D = \overline{\operatorname{orb}(\mathbb{R}_o n)}$  and  $D_i = \overline{\operatorname{orb}(\mathbb{R}_o n_i)}$   $1 \le i \le s$  be the corresponding T-stable irreducible divisors on X = Temb ( $\Delta$ ). Again by Proposition 6.7, we have

$$(**)n_{i-1} + n_{i+1} + a_in_i + b_in = 0$$
  $1 \le i \le s$ ,

where  $n_0 = n_s, n_{s+1} = n_1$ , and

$$a_i = D_i^2 \cdot D.$$

Since *D* is a 2-dimensional complete non-singular torus embedding (cf. 64 Theorem 4.3) with stable curves  $D_i \cap D \ 1 \le i \le s$ , we see that the weighted link at *v* is exactly the weighted circular graph of *D* described immediately before Coro 8.5.



**Definition**. A doubly  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weighted triangulation of  $S^2$  is called *admissible* if, around each vertex, the equations  $(**)1 \le i \le s$  in unknowns  $n, n_1, \ldots, n_s$  are compatible and if, moreover, the weighted link of *each* vertex is a weighted circular graph obtained as in Corollary 8.5.

**Definition.** An isomorphism from an admissible *N*-weighted triangulation to another is an automorphism of *N* which induces an isomorphism from the corresponding f.r.p.p.decomposition to another. *A combinatorial isomorphism* from an admissible doubly  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weighted triangulation

of  $S^2$  to another is an incidence and  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weight preserving bijection from the set of spherical simplices of one triangulation to that of the other.

### 65 **Proposition 9.1.** We have canonical bijections

(embeddings/k) $(triangns of s)$ $(z = werred wardships)$	(isom. classes of 3 – dim <u>1</u> com- plete n.s. torus embeddings/k	$\left\{ \stackrel{\sim}{\rightarrow} \begin{cases} isom. & classes\\ of & admissible\\ N-weighted\\ triangns of s \end{cases} \right.$	$ \left\{ \begin{array}{c} combinatorial \\ isom.  Classes  of \\ admissible  doubly \\ \mathbb{Z}\text{-wei-ted \ triangns} \\ c \in \mathcal{S} \end{array} \right\} $
---	--	---	--

*Proof.* From what we have seen so far, it is enough to prove the surjectivity of the second map. Let  $\{n, n', n''\}$  be a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of N. Pick an arbitrary triangle of an admissible doubly  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weighted triangulation of S, and give N-weights n, n', n'' to its three vertices in any way. Then using the equality (\*), we can successively determine the N-weights of the other vertices of the triangulation. This N-weighting is admissible. Indeed, for each vertex v with N-weight n, the vertices  $v_1, \ldots, v_s$  with N-weights  $n_1, \ldots, n_s$  of its link satisfy the equalities (\*\*). Since the double  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weighting is admissible,  $n_1, \ldots, n_s$  go around n once in this order, by Proposition 6.7 applied to  $N/\mathbb{Z}n$  and the images in it of  $n_1, \ldots, n_s$ . Thus the spherical triangles on S cut out by

$$\mathbb{R}_{\circ}n + \mathbb{R}_{\circ}n_i + \mathbb{R}_{\circ}n_{i+1} \quad 1 \le i \le s$$

together fill up a neighborhood of  $(\mathbb{R}_{\circ}n) \cap S$  combinatorially isomorphic to the star of v in the original triangulation which is the spherical polygon with vertices  $v_1, \ldots, v_s$ . Since *S* is simply connected, we are done.

**66 Remark.** The advantage of using admissible double  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weighting is the following: Once a combinatorial type of a triangulation of  $S^2$  is given, possible admissible double  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weighting on it are computable in principle, although it is more convenient sometimes to use information's on the N-weights. To state the final result, however, it is less cumbersome to choose a convenient  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of *N* and describe one possible admissible N-weighting corresponding to it in terms of the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis.

**Convention** Given an admissible N-weighted triangulation of S and a vertex with the N-weight n, we call that vertex *the vertex* n, for simplicity, although n itself need not be on S.

By Corollary 7.6, the blowing up of  $X = Temb(\Delta)$  along  $\overline{orb(\sigma)}$  corresponds to the following subdivision of the *N*-weighted triangulation  $\bigcup_{\tau \in \Delta} (\tau \cap S)$ .



The following result, whose proof is immediate, will turn out to be 67 useful in our classification below.

**Corollary 9.2.** Given an admissible N-weighted triangulation of  $S = S^2$ , let n be a vertex and let  $n_1, \ldots, n_2$  be the vertices of its link going around n in this order.

- (i) If  $s \ge 4$ , there exist *i*, *j* such that the vertices  $n_i, n, n_j$  are collinear on *S*, i.e are on a great circle.
- (ii) If the vertex *n* is *3-valent*, i.e. s = 3, there exists an integer *b* such that  $n_1 + n_2 + n_3 + bn = 0$ . The vertex *n* can be eliminated by a blowing down along a non-singular center if and only if b = -1.

The double  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights around the vertex *n* are as in the picture below.

- (iii) If the vertex *n* is 4-valent, i.e s = 4, there exist integer *a*, *b*, *c* such that after re-numbering  $n_i$ 's, we have  $n_2 + n_4 + bn = 0$  (in particular, the vertices  $n_2$ , n,  $n_4$  are collinear) and  $n_1 + n_3 + an_2 + cn = 0$ . The vertex *n* can be eliminated by a blowing down along a non-singular center if and only if b = -1. The double  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights around the vertex *n* are as in the picture below.
- (iv) If the vertex *n* is 5-valent, i.e. s = 5, there exist integer  $a, b_1, b_2, b_3$ ,  $b_4, b_5$  with  $b_1 = b_3 + b_4$  and  $(-1)b_2 + (a - 1)b_3 = (-a)b_4 + (-1)b_5$ such that, after re-numbering  $n_i$ 's we have  $n_1 + n_3 + (a - 1)n_2 + b_2n =$   $0; n_2 + n_4 - n_3 + b_3n = 0, n_3 + n_5 - n_4 + b_4n = 0, n_4 + n_1 - an_5 +$   $b_5n = 0$  and  $n_2 + n_5 + b_1n = 0$  (in particular, the vertices  $n_2, n, n_5$ are collinear) The double  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights around the vertex *n* are as in picture below.

$$n_1 + n_2 + n_3$$



To show that a given complete non-singular  $X = Temb(\Delta)$  is projective, i.e. there exist integers  $a_i$  satisfying the condition (*iii*) of Corollary 6.5, we have to check many inequalities. The following sufficient condition for non projectively is very convenient in concrete applications.

**Proposition 9.3.** Let  $S = \bigcup_{\sigma \in \Delta} (\sigma \cap S)$  be an admissible *N*-weighted triangulation of  $S = S^2$ . Then the corresponding complete non-singular  $Temb(\Delta)$  is non-projective if there exists a spherical polygon  $n_1n_2...$  $n_gn_1$  in the triangulation satisfying the following: For  $1 \le i \le g$ , let  $\sigma_i \cap S$  be one of two triangles having  $n_in_{i+1}$  as edge  $(n_{g+1} = n_1)$ . Let  $\ell_i$ be the remaining vertex of  $\sigma_i \cap S$ , i.e.  $\{\ell_i, n_i, n_{i+1}\}$  are the fundamental generators of  $\sigma_i$ . There exists  $n \in S$  not on the polygon  $n_1n_2...n_gn_1$ and real numbers  $\alpha_i, \beta_i, \gamma_i$  with  $\alpha_i \ge 0$  and  $\gamma_i > 0$  such that

$$\ell_i + \alpha_{i+1} n_{i+1} = \beta_i n_i + \gamma_i \qquad 1 \le i \le g,$$

*i.e.* the edge  $\ell_i n_{i+1}$  intersects the great circle passing through  $n_i$  and n strictly inside the arc  $n_i n(-n_i)$ .



*Proof.* If  $Temb(\Delta)$  were projective, then Corollary 6.5, there exists  $a_i$ ,  $b_i \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $m_i = m(\sigma_i) \in M$  for  $1 \le i \le g$  such that.

$$\langle m_i, \ell_i \rangle = -a_i, \langle m_i, n_i \rangle = -b_i, \langle m_i, n_{i+1} \rangle = -b_{i+1}$$

and

$$\langle m_{i-1}, \ell_i \rangle > -a_i, \langle m_{i-1}, n_{i+1} \rangle > -b_{i+1}$$

for  $1 \le i \le g$ , where  $m_0 = m_g$ . We see immediately that  $0 < \langle m_{i-1}, \ell_i \rangle + a_i = -\alpha_{i+1} \{ \langle m_{i-1}, n_{i+1} \rangle + b_{i+1} \} + \gamma_i \{ \langle m_{i-1}, n \rangle - \langle m_i, n \rangle \}$ , hence

$$\langle m_{i-1}, n \rangle > \langle m_i, n \rangle$$
  $1 \le i \le g$ ,

a contradiction.

1. Torus embeddings

Let  $\{n, n', n''\}$  be a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of N, and let  $\ell = -(n + n' + n'')$ . Let P 70 be the surface of the tetrahedron in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  with vertices  $n, n', n'', \ell$ , which has 0 as the bary center. For  $0 \neq y \in N_{\mathbb{R}}$ , let us call  $(\mathbb{R}_{\circ}y) \cap P$  the point yon P. For  $d \geq 7$ , consider the following subdivision  $P_d$  of P, where the bottom triangle nn'n'' is left as it is.

$$n_{1} = n, n_{2} = n', n_{3} = n''$$

$$n_{4} = \ell$$

$$n_{5} = n_{3} + n_{4}$$

$$n_{6} = n_{1} + n_{4}$$

$$n_{j} = n_{6} + (j - 6)n_{4} (6 \le j \le d - 1)$$

$$n_{d} = n_{2} + n_{4}$$



**Proposition 9.4.** For  $d \ge 7$ , let  $\Delta_d$  be the f.r.p.p.decomposition of  $N_R$  obtained by joining 0 with the simplices of the above subdivision  $p_d$ . Then we have the following:

- (i)  $X_d = Temb(\Delta_d)$  is a non-projective complete non-singular 3 dimensional tours embedding.
- (ii) There exists a *T*-equivariant surjective morphism from  $X_d$  to  $\mathbb{P}_3$ .
- (iii)  $X_d$  cannot be (not necessarily equivariantly) blown down along any non-singular center.

## (iv) <u>The tours embedding obtained by blowing up $X_d$ along the curve</u> $\overline{orb(\mathbb{R}_o n_3 + \mathbb{R}_o n_d)}$ is projective, and is obtained from $\mathbb{P}_3$ by a succession of blowing ups along *T*-stable curves.

*Proof.* It is immediate to see that  $X_d$  is complete and non-singular.  $X_d$  is non-projective by proposition 9.3 applied to the polygon nn'n''n of  $\bigcup (\sigma \cap S)$ , with  $(\mathbb{R}_o \ell) \cap S$  to be taken as *n* in Proposition 9.3 (*ii*) is  $\sigma \epsilon \Delta_d$  obvious, since  $P_d$  is a subdivision of *P*. (*iii*) If  $X_d$  were obtained by blowing up a non-singular variety along a non-singular center, then the exceptional divisors is automatically *T*-stable. But it is easy to check that  $X_d$  cannot be equivariantly blown along a non-singular center. (*iv*) is immediate.  $\Box$ 

**Remark.** The case d = 7 is the simplest non-projective complete nonsingular 3-dimensional torus embedding, which was already described in in Miyake-Oda [40]. See the next page for the picture of *T*-orbits under the process described in (*iv*) Demazure [8, Appendice] previously gave an example of non projective complete non-singular 3-dimensional torus embeddings which has 32 *T*-stable irreducible divisors instead of 7 in our case. We latter get many other non-projective examples as the by-products of our partial classification below.



### 9. Complete non-singular torus embeddings in dimension 3

By analogy, consider instead the 3-dimensional cone

$$\sigma = \mathbb{R}_o n + \mathbb{R}'_n + \mathbb{R}_o n'$$

and let  $\ell' = n + n' + n''$ . For  $d \ge 7$ , let  $\Delta'_d$  be the subdivision of  $\sigma$  which looks like this:



Then the following example gives as answer to a question raised by Fujiki.

Corollary 9.5. The equivariant proper morphism

$$f: Y_d = Temb(\Delta'_d) \rightarrow U(\sigma) = k^3$$

is non-projective and cannot be written as a succession of blowing ups along non-singular centers. But the blowing up  $Y'_d$  of  $Y_d$  along

$$\overline{orb(\mathbb{R}_o n^{\prime\prime} + \mathbb{R}_o (n^{\prime} + \ell^{\prime}))}$$

is obtained first by blowing up  $U(\sigma)$  along the T-fixed point and then by successively blowing up along T-stable curves.

*Proof.* All except the non-projectivity of f are immediate. Consider the tetrahedron with vertices n, n', n'' and  $\ell = -(n + n' + n'')$ , and its subdivision which  $\Delta'_d$  induces on the face nn'n''. By Proposition 9.3, we have a surjective morphism from a non-projective complete nonsingular torus embedding to  $\mathbb{P}_3$ . Since f is obviously its restriction to 74  $U(\sigma) \subset \mathbb{P}_3$ , we are done.

73

It is possible to describe projective equivariant birational morphism directly in terms of the corresponding subdivision. We refer the reader to Mumford et al. [63, Chap. III, p. 152-154 in particular]. See also Namikawa [47].

**Remark.** On the other hand, we can show in a similar fashion that the following subdivision  $\Delta_d''$  of  $\sigma = \mathbb{R}_o n + \mathbb{R}_o n' + \mathbb{R}_o n''$  gives rise to a *projective* morphism  $Temb(\Delta_d'') \rightarrow U(\sigma) \cong k^3$  which cannot be written as a finite succession of blowing ups along non-singular centers, but can be if  $Temb(\Delta_d'')$  is blown up once along  $\overline{\operatorname{orb}(\mathbb{R}_o n' + \mathbb{R}_o(3n + n' + 2n''))}$ .



75

Let *d* be the number of spherical vertices of a triangulation of  $S^2$ . Then obviously we have

$$3d - 6 =$$
 the number of spherical edges  
 $2d - 4 =$  the number of spherical triangles. (\*)

If the triangulation is of form  $S = \bigcup_{\sigma \in \Delta} (\sigma \cap S)$  with  $X = Temb(\Delta)$  complete non-singular, then d = the cardinality of  $Sk^1(\Delta)$ , 3d-6 = the number of 2-dimensional cones in  $\Delta$ , 2d - 4 = the number of 3-dimensional cones in  $\Delta$ . By Proposition 6.1, we have

d - 3 = the Picard number of X.

### 9. Complete non-singular torus embeddings in dimension 3

Furthermore for  $v \ge 3$ , let  $p_v$  be the number of *v*-valent spherical vertices of a triangulation of  $S^2$ . Then we see that

$$\sum_{\nu \ge 3} (6 - \nu) p_{\nu} = 12. \tag{**}$$

By Proposition 9.1, the classification of complete non-singular 3dimensional torus embedding is reduced to

- (i) the classification of combinatorially different triangulations of  $S^2$  and
- (ii) the different admissible *N*-weightings (or admissible double  $\mathbb{Z}$  *weightings*) on them.

According to Grünbaum [13, Chap.13] [14], we have the following relevant facts: By Steinitz's theorem (which is known to be false in higher dimension) the combinatorial equivalence classes of the triangulation of  $S^2$  are in one to one correspondence with the combinatorial types of convex simplicial polyhedral in  $\mathbb{R}^3$ . Given *d*, there seems, however, to be no formula for the number of the latter. It is empirically **76** known for smaller values of *d* as follows:

d	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12
	1	1	2	5	14	50	233	1249	7595

In this connection, Eberhard's theorem [13, 13.3] looks intriguingly relevant to us, in view of our description of blowing ups along non-singular centers immediately before Corollary 9.2.

Anyway for  $d \le 8$ , we have the list in the next page of the combinatorially different triangulation of  $S^2$ , where we stereographically project them onto the plane from one of the spherical vertices, and we express circular arcs on the plane simply be liner arcs.

Among 7595 different triangulation for d = 12, we have the one induced by an icosahedron.

For the classification of complete non-singular 3-dimensional torus embeddings, it remains to find possible admissible *N*-weightings on them. Obviously, it is enough to find those *without any vertices which can be eliminated by blowing downs along non-singular centers.* 

Combinatorial types of the triangulation of  $S^2$  for  $d \le 8$ 


Icosahedron.



**Theorem 9.6.** Let X be a 3-dimensional complete non-singular torus **78** embedding which cannot be blown down along any no-singular center. Then X is isomorphic to one among the projective space  $\mathbb{P}_3$ 

 $\mathbb{P}_2$  – bundles over  $\mathbb{P}_1$   $\mathbb{P}(0_{\mathbb{P}_1} \oplus 0_{\mathbb{P}_1}(a) \oplus 0_{\mathbb{P}_1}(b))$   $a, b \in \mathbb{Z}$ 

 $\mathbb{P}_1$ -bundles  $\mathbb{P}(0_Y \oplus L)$  over complete non-singular 2-dimensional torus embeddings Y and  $L \in Pic(Y)$  and, if the Picard number  $d - 3 \leq 5$ ,  $Temb(\Delta)$  corresponding to the following 13 different sequences with integral parameters of admissible N-weighted triangulations of  $S^2$ , where  $\{n, n', n''\}$  is a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of  $N = \mathbb{Z}^3$ .











**Remark.** This theorem was already announced in Miyake-Oda [40] ex- **80** cept that [8-12] was not counted there. This fact, as well as the considerable simplification of the proof below, was pointed out by Nagaya [43].

**Remark.** Some of the torus embeddings listed in Theorem 9.6 can be blown down along a non-singular center if the integral parameters take special values.  $\mathbb{P}_3$ ,  $\mathbb{P}_2$ -bundles,  $\mathbb{P}_1$ -bundles, [7-2], [8-2] and [8-10] are all projective. On the other hand, [7-5] and [8 - 5''] are  $X_7$  and  $X_8$  of Proposition 9.4, respectively, hence are non-projective. We can show that  $[8 - 5'](a \neq 0)$ , [8-8], [8-12], [8 - 14'] and [8 - 14''] are nonprojective, using Proposition 9.3. [8 - 13'] and [8 - 13''] are not projective, except when they can be blown down for special values of the integral parameters. For these torus embeddings we can easily check the weak version of the conjecture at the beginning of this section.

For simplicity, we adopt the following definition.

**Definition**. An admissible *N*-weighted triangulation of  $S^2$  is called *weakly minimal* if the corresponding complete non-singular center, i.e. the *N*-weighted triangulation has no 3-valent or 4-valent vertex which can be eliminated by blowing down along any non-singular center.

81 **Proof of Theorem 9.6.** If d = 4, then  $X \cong \mathbb{P}_3$  as a special case of Theorem 7.1. in the remainder of the proof, we repeatedly use Corollary 9.2, without explicit reference, to determine admissible *N*-weightings or the corresponding double  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weightings for a given triangulation of  $S^2$  with  $d \ge 5$ . The argument depends very much on the distribution of the valency of the vertices.

**Lemma 9.7.** For  $d \ge 5$ , let [d - 1] be the triangulation of  $S^2$  which looks like the picture. A weakly minimal admissible N-weighting on it is necessarily of the following form up to isomorphism and corresponds to a projective torus embedding:



- (1) d = 5, and  $\{n_3, n_4, n_5\}$  are collinear. In this case, the corresponding torus embedding is a  $\mathbb{P}_2$ -bundle over  $\mathbb{P}_1$ .
- (2)  $d \ge 5$ ,  $n_1 + n_2 = 0$  and  $\{n_1, n_i, n_2\}$  are collinear for all  $3 \le i \le d$ . In this case, the corresponding torus embedding is a  $\mathbb{P}_1$ -bundle over a 2-dimensional complete non-singular torus embedding determined by the images of  $n_i, 3 \le i \le d$ , in  $N/\mathbb{Z}n_1$ .

*Proof.* If d = 5, look at the 4-valent vertices  $n_3$ ,  $n_4$ ,  $n_5$ . Then by Corollary 9.2, either  $\{n_3, n_4, n_5\}$  are collinear hence on a great circle, or  $\{n_1, n_i, n_2\}$  are collinear for all  $3 \le i \le 5$ . Thus we easily get (1) or (2) d = 5 by 7.6'.

If d = 6, the triangulation is symmetric with respect to the pairs

64

 $\{n_1, n_2\}, \{n_3, n_5\}, \text{ and } \{n_4, n_6\}$ . Again by Corollary 9.2 applied to the 4valent vertices, we may assume that  $n_1$  and  $n_2$  are antipodal, i.e.  $n_1+n_2 =$ 0. Hence we get (2) d = 6, by 7.6'

When  $d \ge 7$ , look at the 4-valent vertices  $n_3, \ldots, n_d$ . If  $\{n_1, n_i, n_2\}$  were collinear for at most one  $3 \le i \le d$ , then  $\{n_3, n_4, \ldots, n_d\}$  would be on a great circle by Corollary 9.2. Since the valency of  $n_2$  is  $d - 2 \ge 5$ , the weighted link of  $n_2$  would have weight -1 at some  $n_i, 3 \le j \le d$ , which could be eliminated by blowing down. If  $\{n_1, n_i, n_2\}$  were collinear for exactly two i's, i = 3 and j say, then  $\{n_1, n_3, n_2, n_j\}$  would be on a great circle, and  $\{n_3, n_4, \ldots, n_j\}$  and  $\{n_j, n_{j+1}, \ldots, n_d\}$  would be collinear. Since  $n_3$  and  $n_i$  would then be antipodal, and since  $\{n_3, n_2, n_i\}$  would be collinear, the weighted link of  $n_2$  would have weight -1 at some  $n_i$ ,  $i \neq 3$ , j, which could again be eliminated. Thus we conclude that  $\{n_1, n_i, n_2\}$  are collinear for more than two, hence for all  $3 \le i \le d$ , since  $n_1$  and  $n_2$  are necessarily antipodal. In view of 7.6' again, we are done.

**Lemma 9.8.** For  $d \ge 6$ , let [d-2] be the triangulation of  $S^2$  which looks like the picture below. A weakly minimal admissible N-weighting on it satisfies the following conditions:  $\{n_3, n_4, \ldots, n_d\}$  are collinear,  $n_1, n_2 = n_3 + n_d$ . There exists  $4 \le j \le d - 3$ , such that  $\{n_j, n_1, n_{j+2}\}$  and  $\{n_i, n_2, n_{i+2}\}$  are collinear.



The corresponding torus embeddings are always projective. In particular, we have  $d \geq 7$ , and the only possible weakly minimal admissible N-weightings for d = 7,8 are [7-2] and [8-2] in Theorem 9.6 up to isomorphism.

*Proof.* If d = 6, look at the weighted link of the 5-valent vertex  $n_2$ . Its weight at  $n_3$  and  $n_6$  cannot be -1, since otherwise  $n_3$  or  $n_6$  can be eliminated. Thus  $\{n_3, n_2, n_6\}, \{n_1, n_4, n_2\}$  and  $\{n_1, n_5, n_2\}$  are collinear again by Corollary 9.2. This means that  $n_1$  and  $n_2$  are antipodal, a contradiction to the strong convexity of cones.

Let  $d \ge 7$ . Since  $n_1$  and  $n_2$  cannot be antipodal, there can be at most one  $4 \le i \le d - 1$  such that  $\{n_1, n_i, n_2\}$  are collinear, hence on a great circle. If there were one such *i*, the weighted link of  $n_2$  would have weight -1 at some  $n_j, 3 \le j \le d, j \ne i$ , but  $\{n_3, n_4, \ldots, n_i\}$  and  $\{n_i, n_{i+1}, \ldots, n_d\}$  would be collinear, a contradiction. Thus we conclude that  $\{n_3, n_4, \ldots, n_d\}$  are collinear. Now look at the weighted link of  $n_1$  (resp. $n_2$ ). Then weight -1 is possible only at  $n_2$  (resp. $n_1$ ). Thus  $n_1 + n_2 = n_3 + n_d$ , and together with  $n_3, \ldots, n_d$  it lies on a great circle. Moreover,  $\{n_j, n_1, n_{j+2}\}$  and  $\{n_j, n_2, n_{j+2}\}$  are collinear for some  $4 \le j \le d-1$ . If d = 7 or 8, there is only one possible such weighted link. The projectivity of the corresponding torus embeddings follows easily from Corollary 9.5 in view of the projectivity of 2-dimensional torus embeddings (Proposition 8.1) and the fact that  $n_1 + n_2 = n_3 + n_d, n_3 \ldots, n_d$ are on a great circle.

**Lemma 9.9** (Nagaya). For  $d \ge 7$ , the triangulation [d - 3] below has no weakly minimal admissible N-weightings.

*Proof.* Suppose there were a weakly minimal admissible *N*-weighting. Since  $n_1$  and  $n_2$  cannot be antipodal, there is at most one  $5 \le j \le d - 1$  such that  $\{n_1, n_j, n_2\}$  are collinear, hence on a great circle.



#### 9. Complete non-singular torus embeddings in dimension 3

If there were one such *j*, look at the 4-valent vertex  $n_4$ .  $\{n_1, n_4, n_5\}$  could not be collinear, since otherwise they would be on a great circle disjoint from the great circle above. Hence  $\{n_2, n_4, n_3\}$  would be collinear. Then look at the weighted link of  $n_5$ . The weight -1 could not be at  $n_3$  nor  $n_4$ . If  $\{n_1, n_5, n_4\}$  were collinear, then they would be on a great circle disjoint from another great circle, a contradiction. Thus **85**  $\{n_2, n_5, n_3\}$  would be collinear, hence  $n_2, n_3$  are antipodal, a contradiction again. We thus conclude that  $\{n_1, n_i, n_2\}$  are not collinear for all  $5 \le i \le d - 1$ , hence  $\{n_5, n_6, \ldots, n_d\}$  are collinear. Look at the vertex  $n_4$  again. If  $\{n_1, n_4, n_5\}$  were collinear, the  $\mathbb{Z}$ - weight of the edge  $n_2n_4$  at  $n_4$  would coincide with that of  $n_3n_4$  at  $n_4$ , which is 1. Then look at the weighted link of  $n_2$ . There would exist  $6 \le j \le d$  such that  $\{n_4, n_2, n_j\}$  are collinear. Thus it has weight -1 at some  $n_k$ ,  $6 \le k \le d$ ,  $k \ne j$ , 4, 1, 5, a contradiction.

Thus  $\{n_2, n_4, n_3\}$  are collinear. Look at the weighted link of  $n_5$ . Since it cannot have weight -1 at  $n_3$  and  $n_4$ , either  $(i)\{n_1, n_5, n_4\}$  are collinear, i.e. on a great circle, hence  $\{n_4, n_1, n_5\}$  are collinear, or (ii)  $\{n_2, n_5, n_3\}$ are collinear, hence  $n_2, n_3$  are antipodal, and  $\{n_2, n_1, n_3\}$  are collinear. In both cases, the weighted link of  $n_1$  would have weight -1 at some  $n_k, 6 \le k \le d$ , a contradiction, since  $\{n_5, n_6, \dots, n_d\}$  are collinear.

**Lemma 9.10** (Nagaya). For  $d \ge 7$ , the triangulation [d - 4] below has no weakly minimal admissible N-weighting.

*Proof.* Suppose the contrary. Since the weighted link of  $n_5$  cannot have weight -1 at  $n_3$  and  $n_4$ ,  $\{n_3, n_5, n_4\}$  are collinear. Look at the weighted **86** link of  $n_6$ . Since its weight at  $n_3$  cannot be -1, we have three possibilities:



- (i)  $\{n_1, n_6, n_5\}$  are collinear, hence on a great circle. Since  $\{n_1, n_5, n_6\}$  are then collinear, the weighted link of  $n_5$  has weight -1 at  $n_4$ , a contradiction.
- (ii)  $\{n_3, n_6, n_7\}$  are collinear. In this case, the weighted link of  $n_5$  and the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights around  $n_5$  can be determined completely by means of the compatibility in Corollary 9.2. We see easily that the weighted link of  $n_1$  has positive weights at  $n_4$  and  $n_5$ , a contradiction.
- (iii)  $\{n_2, n_6, n_3\}$  are collinear. Again using the compatibility of the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights around  $n_5$ , we easily see that  $\{n_4, n_2, n_6\}$  are collinear, hence  $n_3$  and  $n_4$  are antipodal. Thus  $\{n_3, n_1, n_4\}$  are also collinear. Since  $n_2, n_2$  cannot be antipodal,  $\{n_1, n_i, n_2\}$  can be collinear for at most one  $5 \le i \le d 1$ . Suppose  $\{n_l, n_j, n_2\}$  were collinear, hence on a great circle. If j = 5, then  $n_3$  could be eliminated. If  $6 \le j$ , then a pair  $n_3, n_4$  of antipodal points would lie strictly on one side of the great circle, a contradiction. Thus  $\{n_1, n_i, n_2\}$  are not collinear for any  $5 \le i \le d 1$ , hence  $\{n_6, n_7, \ldots, n_d\}$  are collinear. Look at the weighted link of  $n_2$ . Since  $\{n_4, n_2, n_6\}$  are assumed to be collinear, there exists  $7 \le k \le d$  such that its weight at  $n_k$  is -1, a contradiction.

**Lemma 9.11** (Nagaya). For  $d \ge 8$ , the triangulation [d - 6] below has no weakly minimal admissible N-weighting.

*Proof.* Suppose the contrary. Since  $n_1$ ,  $n_2$  cannot be antipodal,  $\{n_1, n_i, n_2\}$  can be collinear for at most one  $6 \le i \le d - 1$ .



- (1) Suppose for one  $6 \le j \le d 1$ ,  $\{n_1, n_j, n_2\}$  were collinear, hence on a great circle. Then  $\{n_j, n_{j+1}, \ldots, n_d\}$  are collinear. Since  $\{n_1, n_2, n_j\}$ are collinear, the consideration of the weighted link of  $n_2$  shows that j = d - 1. Look at the weighted link of  $n_4$ . Since  $\{n_1, n_4, n_5\}$ cannot be on a great circle, we see that  $\{n_3, n_4, n_6\}$  are collinear. Look then at the weighted link of  $n_5$ . From what we have seen so far, we can conclude that  $\{n_3, n_5, n_6\}$  are collinear, hence  $n_3, n_6$ are antipodal and are strictly on one side of the great circle passing through  $n_1, n_2, n_{d-1}$ , a contradiction.
- (2) We thus conclude that  $\{n_1, n_i, n_2\}$  are not collinear for all  $6 \le i \le d-1$ , hence  $\{n_6, n_7, \ldots, n_d\}$  are collinear.

Look at the weighted link of  $n_4$ .

(2-i) If  $\{n_1, n_4, n_5\}$  are not collinear, then  $\{n_3, n_4, n_6\}$  are collinear. The weighted link of  $n_5$  forces  $\{n_3, n_5, n_6\}$  to be collinear, hence  $n_3, n_6$  are antipodal and  $\{n_3, n_1, n_6\}$  are collinear. Look at the weighted link of  $n_1$  and  $n_2$  simultaneously. Their weights at  $n_i, 7 \le i \le d$ , coincide. (2 - i - a) Suppose  $\{n_i, n_2, n_k\}, 6 \le j < k \le d$ , were collinear. Since  $n_3, n_4$  are antipodal,  $n_2 n_j n_{j+1} \dots n_k n_2$  cannot be a great circle, hence  $n_i, n_k$  are antipodal. The sequence of weights of the weighted link of  $n_2$  at  $n_{i+1}, \ldots, n_{k-1}$  is a part of that of the weighted link of  $n_1$  at  $n_7$ ,  $n_8, \ldots, n_d, n_1, n_5$ . We easily see that this is a contradiction. (2 - i - b)If  $\{n_1, n_2, n_i\}, 6 \le j \le d$ , are collinear, then  $n_1 n_i n_2 n_1$  is a great circle, which determines a hemisphere containing a pair  $n_3$ ,  $n_6$  of antipodal points, a contradiction. (2-i-c) Suppose  $\{n_5, n_2, n_j\}, 6 \le j \le d$ , are collinear. Then the consideration of the weights at  $n_{i+1}, \ldots, n_d, n_1$  of the weighted link of  $n_2$  show that j = d. Look then at the weighs at  $n_6, n_7, \ldots, n_{d-1}$  of the weighted link of  $n_2$ . There would be -1 somewhere, a contradiction.

(2 - ii) Suppose  $\{n_1, n_4, n_5\}$  are collinear, hence on a great circle and  $\{n_4, n_1, n_5\}$  are collinear. Look at the weighted link of  $n_1$  and  $n_2$ . As in (2 - i), we arrive at a contradiction.

**Lemma 9.12** (Nagaya). For  $d \ge 8$ , the triangulation [d - 7] has no **89** weakly minimal admissible N-weighting.

*Proof.* Suppose the contrary. Again  $\{n_1, n_i, n_2\}$  can be collinear for at most one  $6 \le i \le d - 1$ .



- (1) Suppose  $\{n_1, n_j, n_2\}$ ,  $6 \le j \le d 1$ , are collinear, hence on a great circle. Hence  $\{n_1, n_2, n_j\}$ ,  $\{n_6, n_7, \ldots, n_j\}$  and  $\{n_j, n_{j+1}, \ldots, n_d\}$  are collinear. Looking at the weighted link of  $n_2$ , we again see that j = d 1,  $\{n_6, \ldots, n_{d-1}\}$  are collinear and  $n_1n_2n_{d-1}n_1$  is a great circle. Look then at the weighted link of  $n_4$ . Obviously,  $\{n_5, n_4, n_6\}$  are not collinear, hence  $\{n_1, n_4, n_3\}$  are collinear and  $\{n_4, n_5, n_6\}$  are not. At 5-valent  $n_5$ ,  $\{n_1, n_5, n_3\}$  are necessarily collinear, but we have a contradiction, since then  $n_1, n_3$  are antipodal and  $n_1n_2n_{d-1}n_1$  is a great circle.
- (2) We conclude that  $\{n_1, n_i, n_2\}$  are not collinear for all  $6 \le i \le d 1$ , hence  $\{n_6, n_7, \dots, n_d\}$  are collinear. Look at the weighted link of  $n_4$ .

(2 - i) If  $\{n_5, n_4, n_6\}$  are collinear, hence on a great circle, the compatibility of the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights around 5-valent  $n_5$  shows that the weighted link of  $n_2$  has a positive weight at  $n_5$ .

90 (2-ii) If  $\{n_5, n_4, n_6\}$  are not collinear, then  $\{n_1, n_4, n_3\}$  are collinear. At 5-valent  $n_5$ , we see that  $\{n_1, n_5, n_3\}$  are collinear, hence  $n_1, n_3$  are antipodal and  $\{n_1, n_6, n_3\}$  are collinear, Again by the compatibility of the  $\mathbb{Z}$  weights around  $n_5$ , we see that the weighted link of  $n_2$  has a positive weight at  $n_5$ .

In both cases (2 - i) and (2 - ii), look at the weighted link of  $n_2$ . Since it has a positive weight ar  $n_5$ ,  $\{n_5, n_2, n_k\}$  are collinear for some 9. Complete non-singular torus embeddings in dimension 3

 $7 \le k \le d$ , hence has weight -1 at some  $n_1$ ,  $6 \le i \le d$ ,  $i \ne k$ , a contradiction.

71

**Lemma 9.13.** A weakly minimal admissible N-weighting for the triangulation [7-5] is necessarily of the form in Theorem 9.6 up to isomorphism.

*Proof.* By symmetry, we may assume that  $\{n_3, n_1, n_6\}$  are collinear. Look at the weighted link of  $n_2$ .



Since the weights at  $n_1$  and  $n_7$  cannot be -1,  $\{n_1, n_2, n_7\}$  are necessarily collinear. Since its weight at  $n_3$  is then -1,  $\{n_2, n_3, n_5\}$  are collinear. Thus  $\{n_3, n_4, n_7\}$  and  $\{n_1, n_5, n_4\}$  are collinear for the same reason. Looking then at the weighted link of  $n_6$ , we see that  $\{n_5, n_6, n_7\}$  are collinear. From what we have seen so far, an admissible double  $\mathbb{Z}$  weighting is uniquely determined as in the picture, by Cor.9.2.



 $n = n_5, n' = n_1, n'' = n_3$  form a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of N. The double  $\mathbb{Z}$  weighting successively determines the other N-weights as follows:  $n_2 = -nn'', n_4 = -n - n', n_6 = -n' - n''$  and  $n_7 = -n - n''$ .

**Lemma 9.14.** A weakly minimal admissible N-weighting on the triangulation [8-5] is either [8 - 5'] or [8 - 5''] of Theorem 9.6 up to isomorphism.

*Proof.* Neither  $\{n_1, n_4, n_2\}$  nor  $\{n_1, n_8, n_2\}$  are collinear, since otherwise the  $\mathbb{Z}$  weights around  $n_3$  would be -1.



In particular,  $n_1$ ,  $n_2$  are not antipodal. Thus  $\{n_1, n_i, n_2\}$  are collinear for at most one  $5 \le i \le 7$ . If there were no such i, then  $n_4n_5n_6n_7n_8n_4$ would necessarily be a great circle and the weighted link of  $n_4$  would have weight -1 at  $n_3$ , a contradiction. By symmetry, it thus suffices to consider the following two cases:

{n<sub>1</sub>, n<sub>5</sub>, n<sub>2</sub>} are collinear, hence {n<sub>5</sub>, n<sub>6</sub>, n<sub>7</sub>, n<sub>8</sub>} are collinear. Look at the weighted link of n<sub>4</sub>. We easily see that {n<sub>3</sub>, n<sub>4</sub>, n<sub>5</sub>} are collinear. Look then at the weighted link of n<sub>2</sub>. If {n<sub>5</sub>, n<sub>2</sub>, n<sub>7</sub>} were collinear, then n<sub>5</sub>n<sub>2</sub>n<sub>7</sub>n<sub>1</sub>n<sub>5</sub> would be a great circle, thus {n<sub>2</sub>, n<sub>7</sub>, n<sub>1</sub>} would be collinear, a contradiction. Thus we conclude that {n<sub>6</sub>, n<sub>2</sub>, n<sub>8</sub>} are collinear. In particular, n<sub>6</sub>, n<sub>8</sub> are antipodal, hence {n<sub>6</sub>, n<sub>1</sub>, n<sub>8</sub>} are also collinear. Then the weighted link of n<sub>1</sub> has necessarily weights -2, -1, -2 at n<sub>3</sub>, n<sub>4</sub>, n<sub>5</sub>, respectively. Looking at the Z weights around n<sub>4</sub> determined so far, we see that the weighted



72

link of  $n_8$  has weight 0 at  $n_4$ , hence  $\{n_2, n_8, n_3\}$  are collinear. The collinearity for each vertex thus determined gives rise to a unique admissible double  $\mathbb{Z}$  weighting with one integral parameter, which determines the admissible *N*-weighting [8 - 5'] in Theorem 9.6, if we let  $n = n_2, n' = n_5, n'' = n_6$ .

2.  $\{n_1, n_6, n_2\}$ , hence  $\{n_4, n_5, n_6\}$  and  $\{n_6, n_7, n_8\}$  are collinear. Look at the weighted link of  $n_2$ . We see that  $\{n_5, n_2, n_7\}$  are collinear. Look then at the weighted link of  $n_4$  and  $n_8$ . By symmetry and because of the fact that their weights at  $n_3$  cannot be -1, we have four possibilities:

- (i) {n<sub>1</sub>, n<sub>4</sub>, n<sub>8</sub>} are collinear, hence are on a great circle. Look at the weighted link of n<sub>1</sub>. Its weights at n<sub>5</sub>, n<sub>6</sub>, n<sub>7</sub> are necessarily. -2, -1, -2. By the compatibility of the Z weights around the 4-valent vertex n<sub>5</sub>, we have a contradiction.
- (ii)  $\{n_2, n_4, n_3\}$  and  $\{n_2, n_8, n_3\}$  are collinear, hence  $n_2, n_3$  are antipodal. We see then that  $\{n_3, n_1, n_6\}$  are collinear. Then the weighted link **93** of  $n_1$  leads us to a contradiction.
- (iii)  $\{n_3, n_4, n_5\}$  and  $\{n_3, n_8, n_7\}$  are collinear, hence  $n_3, n_6$  are antipodal. Again we see that  $\{n_3, n_1, n_6\}$  are collinear, a contradiction.
- (iv)  $\{n_3, n_4, n_5\}$  and  $\{n_3, n_8, n_2\}$  are collinear. Then by the compatibility of the Zweights around the vertices  $n_7$  and  $n_8$ , we see that the weighted link of  $n_1$  has weight -3, -1, -2, -1, 1, 0 at  $n_3, n_4, n_5, n_6$ ,  $n_7, n_8$ , respectively, hence in particular  $\{n_3, n_1, n_7\}$  are collinear. An admissible double Z -weighting is uniquely determined by these considerations and gives rise to the admissible N-weighting [8 - 5''] of Thm 9.6.

**Lemma 9.15.** A weakly minimal N-weighting on the triangulation [8-8] is of the form in Theorem 9.6 up to isomorphism.

*Proof.* By symmetry, we may assume that  $\{n_4, n_1, n_5\}$  are collinear. Looking at the weighted link of  $n_2$  and of  $n_3$ , we see that  $\{n_1, n_2, n_6\}$  and  $\{n_1, n_3, n_7\}$  are collinear.



Look then at the weighted link of  $n_4$  and of  $n_5$ .  $\{n_2, n_4, n_8\}$  are not collinear, since otherwise they would be on a great circle, hence a contradiction for the weighted link of  $n_2$  would result. Similarly, we see that  $\{n_3, n_5, n_8\}$  are not collinear. By symmetry, we thus have three possibilities:

- 1.  $\{n_1, n_4, n_6\}$  and  $\{n_1, n_5, n_7\}$  are collinear. Then  $\{n_1, n_6\}$  and  $\{n_1, n_7\}$  are pairwise antipodal, a contradiction.
  - 2.  $\{n_3, n_4, n_6\}$  and  $\{n_2, n_5, n_7\}$  are collinear. Let the weighted link of  $n_2$  have weight *b* at  $n_6$ . The collinearity we have so far then determines all the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights around  $n_2$  in terms of *b*. But the compatibility for them leads to b = -1, a contradiction.
  - {n<sub>3</sub>, n<sub>4</sub>, n<sub>6</sub>} and {n<sub>1</sub>, n<sub>5</sub>, n<sub>7</sub>} are collinear. Let the weighted link of n<sub>2</sub> have weight b at n<sub>6</sub>. Then the compatibility of the ℤ weights around n<sub>2</sub> shows that {n<sub>5</sub>, n<sub>8</sub>, n<sub>6</sub>} are collinear. Hence the weighted link of n<sub>8</sub> necessarily has weights -2, -1 at n<sub>7</sub>, n<sub>3</sub>, n<sub>4</sub>, respectively. In this way, an admissible double ℤ -weighting is uniquely determined and gives rise to the admissible N-weighting [8-8] of Thm 9.6.

74

**Lemma 9.16.** *The triangulation* [8-9] *has no weakly minimal admissible N-weighting.* 

*Proof.* Suppose the contrary. Look at the weighted link of  $n_1$ . By symmetry, it is enough to consider three cases.



- 1.  $\{n_2, n_1, n_3\}$  are collinear, hence on a great circle. Looking at the **95** weighted link of  $n_2, n_3$  and  $n_4$ , we immediately get a contradiction.
- 2.  $\{n_2, n_1, n_6\}$  are collinear. In this case, the weighted link of  $n_1$  has weights -1 at  $n_7$  and  $n_8$ , a contradiction.
- 3.  $\{n_6, n_1, n_7\}$  are collinear. The same argument applies to the other 6 valent vertices  $n_2, n_3$  and  $n_4$ . But for the weighted link of  $n_2$ ,  $\{n_5, n_2, n_8\}$  cannot be collinear, since otherwise we would easily conclude that  $\{n_3, n_2, n_4\}$  are also collinear hence on a great circle, a contradiction by (1) applied to  $n_5$  instead of  $n_1$ . Taking into account the similar conclusion for  $n_3$ , we need, by symmetry, to consider the following three cases:

(i)  $\{n_5, n_2, n_7\}$  and  $\{n_5, n_3, n_6\}$  are collinear. In this case, the consideration of the weighted link of  $n_2$  and  $n_3$  leads us to a contraction for the weighted link of  $n_1$ 

### 1. Torus embeddings

- (ii)  $\{n_5, n_2, n_7\}$  and  $\{n_6, n_3, n_8\}$  are collinear.
- (iii)  $\{n_7, n_2, n_8\}$  and  $\{n_6, n_3, n_8\}$  are collinear.

In cases (*ii*) and (*iii*), the  $\mathbb{Z}$ - weights around  $n_6, n_7, n_8$  are necessarily 0, 0, -2 a contradiction for the weighted link of  $n_1$ .

**Lemma 9.17.** A weakly minimal admissible N-weighting for the triangulation [8-10] is necessarily of the form in Theorem 9.6 up to isomorphism.

*Proof.* Note first that the triangulation can be written in a more symmetric form as on the right hand side.



96

Look at the weighted link of  $n_1$ . Then  $\{n_7, n_1, n_8\}$ . are collinear. Look then at the weighted link of  $n_2$ . Then  $\{n_3, n_2, n_4\}$  are not collinear, hence  $\{n_5, n_2, n_6\}$  are collinear. Indeed, if otherwise,  $\{n_3, n_2, n_4\}$  would be a great circle. Then looking at the weighted link of  $n_3$  and  $n_4$ , we would get a contradiction for the weighted link of  $n_1$ .

If  $\{n_5, n_3, n_6\}$  or  $\{n_5, n_4, n_6\}$  were collinear, then  $n_5, n_6$  would be antipodal, and we would get a contradiction for the weighted link of  $n_1$ .

If  $\{n_2, n_3, n_4\}$  or  $\{n_2, n_4, n_3\}$  were collinear, then they would be on a great circle, a contradiction again.

Thus for the weighted link of  $n_3$ , either  $\{n_2, n_3, n_7\}$  or  $\{n_1, n_3, n_6\}$  are collinear. We have a similar conclusion for the weighted link of  $n_4$ . By symmetry, we need to consider the following three cases:

- 9. Complete non-singular torus embeddings in dimension 3
  - 1.  $\{n_1, n_3, n_6\}$  and  $\{n_1, n_4, n_6\}$  are collinear. We get a contradiction 97 for the weighted link of  $n_1$ .
  - 2.  $\{n_2, n_3, n_7\}$  and  $\{n_2, n_4, n_8\}$  are collinear. In this case, we have a contradiction for the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights around  $n_7, n_8$ , and  $n_2$ .
  - 3.  $\{n_1, n_3, n_6\}$  and  $\{n_2, n_4, n_8\}$  are collinear. In this case, we can determine all the double  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights uniquely from the collinearity conditions so far. We get the unique admissible N-weighting described in Theorem 9.6.

**Lemma 9.18.** A weakly minimal admissible N-weighting for the triangulation [8-11] is of the form in Theorem 9.6 up to isomorphism.

*Proof.* Look at the weighted link of  $n_1$  and  $n_2$ . By symmetry, we need to consider the following three cases:



1.  $\{n_4, n_1, n_2\}$  and  $\{n_1, n_2, n_3\}$  are collinear, hence  $\{n_1, n_2, n_3, n_4\}$  are on a great circle. We easily get a contradiction for the weighted link of  $n_5$ .

- 2.  $\{n_4, n_1, n_2\}$  and  $\{n_5, n_2, n_6\}$  are collinear. In this case,  $n_1, n_5, n_7$  and  $n_1, n_6, n_8$  are necessarily collinear. The consideration of the weighted link of  $n_3$  shows that  $\{n_5, n_3, n_6\}$  are collinear, hence  $n_5, n_6$  are antipodal.
- 3.  $\{n_5, n_1, n_6\}$  and  $\{n_5, n_2, n_6\}$  are collinear, hence  $n_5, n_6$  are again antipodal.

Thus in cases (2) and (3),  $n_5$  and  $n_6$  are antipodal, hence { $n_5$ ,  $n_3$ ,  $n_6$ } and { $n_5$ ,  $n_4$ ,  $n_6$ } are collinear. Look at the weighted link of  $n_5$ . Since { $n_3$ ,  $n_5$ ,  $n_4$ } cannot be on a great circle, and since the situation is symmetric with respect to  $n_3$  and  $n_4$ , we may assume that { $n_2$ ,  $n_5$ ,  $n_7$ } are collinear. Looking at the weighted link of  $n_4$  and the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights around  $n_7$ ,  $n_8$  and  $n_1$ , we conclude that { $n_2$ ,  $n_6$ ,  $n_8$ } are collinear. From what we have seen so far, we get a unique admissible double  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weighting with two integral parameters, which gives rise to the admissible N-weighting described in Theorem 9.6.

**Lemma 9.19** (Nagaya). A weakly minimal admissible N-weighting on the triangulation [8-12] is of the form in Theorem 9.6 up to isomorphism.

*Proof.* The triangulation can again be written in a more symmetric form as on the right hand side.



78

- By symmetry, we may assume that  $\{n_3, n_1, n_7\}$  are collinear. Look at the weighted link of  $n_2$  and of  $n_3$ . We need to consider three cases:
  - If {n<sub>3</sub>, n<sub>2</sub>, n<sub>7</sub>} are collinear, then n<sub>3</sub>, n<sub>7</sub> are antipodal, hence {n<sub>3</sub>, n<sub>5</sub>, n<sub>7</sub>} and {n<sub>3</sub>, n<sub>6</sub>, n<sub>7</sub>} are collinear. Looking at the weighted link of n<sub>5</sub>, we see that {n<sub>5</sub>, n<sub>4</sub>, n<sub>8</sub>} are collinear, a contradiction for the weighted link of n<sub>6</sub>.
  - 2. If  $\{n_1, n_2, n_5\}$  and  $\{n_1, n_3, n_5\}$  are collinear, then  $n_1, n_5$  are antipodal, hence  $\{n_1, n_6, n_5\}$ ,  $\{n_1, n_7, n_5\}$  and  $\{n_3, n_5, n_7\}$  are collinear. Looking at the weighted link of  $n_5$ , we see that  $\{n_5, n_4, n_8\}$  are collinear, again a contradiction for the weighted link of  $n_6$ .
  - 3. Let  $\{n_1, n_2, n_5\}$  and  $\{n_2, n_3, n_6\}$  be collinear. If  $\{n_6, n_4, n_7\}$  were collinear hence on a great circle, the weighted link of  $n_7$  would have weight -2 at  $n_2$ . Moreover, the weighted link of  $n_5$  would have weight 1 at  $n_4$ , hence  $\{n_3, n_5, n_4\}$  would be collinear and the weight at  $n_2$  would be -1. Since the weighted link of  $n_1$  has weight 0 at  $n_2$ , we would violate the compatibility for the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights around  $n_2$ .

100

Thus we conclude that  $\{n_3, n_1, n_7\}$ ,  $\{n_1, n_2, n_5\}$ ,  $\{n_2, n_3, n_6\}$  and  $\{n_5, n_4, n_8\}$  are collinear. We then have three possibilities for the weighted link of  $n_5$ . If  $\{n_3, n_5, n_7\}$  were collinear, then  $n_3, n_7$  would be antipodal, a contradiction, since we are in case (1). If  $\{n_2, n_5, n_6\}$  were collinear, then  $\{n_1, n_2, n_5, n_6\}$  would be on a great circle, hence  $n_2, n_6$  would be antipodal. By symmetry, we are in case (1), a contradiction. Thus  $\{n_3, n_5, n_4\}$  are collinear.

We then four possibilities for the weighted link of  $n_6$ . If  $\{n_3, n_6, n_4\}$  were collinear, then  $n_3, n_4$  would be antipodal, hence  $\{n_1, n_7, n_4\}$  would be collinear, a contradiction for the weighted link of  $n_7$ . If  $\{n_5, n_6, n_8\}$  were collinear, then  $n_5, n_8$  would be antipodal, hence  $\{n_5, n_7, n_8\}$  would be collinear. Looking at the weighted link of  $n_6$  and  $n_7$ , we would get a contradiction for the  $\mathbb{Z}$ - weights around  $n_1$ . If  $\{n_4, n_6, n_7\}$  were collinear hence on a great circle,  $\{n_4, n_7, n_6\}$  would be collinear. Looking at the

weighted link of  $n_6$  and  $n_7$ , we would again get a contradiction for the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights around  $n_1$ .

Thus  $\{n_1, n_6, n_8\}$  are collinear. These collinearity conditions determine a unique admissible double  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weighting, which gives rise to the *N*-weighting [8-12] in Theorem 9.6.

**Lemma 9.20.** A weakly minimal admissible N-weighting on the triangulation [8-13] is either [8-13] or [8 - 13''] of Theorem 9.6 up to isomorphism.



- 101 *Proof.* Look at the weighted link of  $n_1$  and  $n_2$ . By symmetry, it suffices to consider three cases:
  - 1.  $\{n_2, n_1, n_6\}$  and  $\{n_1, n_2, n_7\}$  are collinear. Look at the weighted link of  $n_5$ . By symmetry, we may assume that  $\{n_2, n_5, n_6\}$ , hence  $\{n_4, n_3, n_5\}$  are collinear. Thus  $n_2, n_6$  are antipodal, and  $\{n_2, n_8, n_6\}$ are collinear. Looking at the weighted link of  $n_8$ , we see that  $\{n_3, n_4, n_8\}$  are collinear. We have two possibilities for the weighted link of  $n_6$ , but by symmetry with respect to  $\{n_3, n_4\}$ , we may assume that  $\{n_3, n_6, n_8\}$  are collinear. Thus  $n_3, n_8$  are antipodal, hence  $\{n_3, n_7, n_8\}$  are collinear. These collinearity conditions determine a unique admissible double  $\mathbb{Z}$  -weighting with two integral parameter which gives rise to the N-weighting [8 - 13'] of Theorem 9.6.

2.  $\{n_5, n_1, n_8\}$  and  $\{n_5, n_2, n_8\}$  are collinear. In this case  $n_5, n_8$  are antipodal, hence  $\{n_5, n_6, n_8\}$  and  $\{n_5, n_7, n_8\}$  are collinear. Looking at the weighted link of  $n_6$  and  $n_7$ , we see that  $\{n_6, n_3, n_7\}$  and  $\{n_6, n_4, n_7\}$  are collinear, hence  $n_6, n_7$  are antipodal and  $\{n_6, n_5, n_7\}$  and  $\{n_6, n_8, n_7\}$  are collinear. These collinearity conditions determine a unique admissible double  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weighting with four integral parameters, which gives rise to the *N*-weighting [8 - 13''] of Theorem 9.6.

It remains to show that the following cannot happen:

3.  $\{n_5, n_1, n_8\}$  and  $\{n_1, n_2, n_7\}$  are collinear.

By symmetry with respect to  $\{n_3, n_4\}$  and our argument (1), (2) applied 102 to  $n_3, n_4$  instead of  $n_1, n_2$ , we may assume that  $\{n_6, n_3, n_7\}$  and  $\{n_3, n_4, n_8\}$ are collinear. Looking at the weighted link of  $n_5$  and  $n_6$ , we see then that  $\{n_2, n_5, n_3\}$  and  $\{n_1, n_6, n_4\}$  are collinear. Let a (resp *b*) be the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weight of the edge  $n_3n_5$  at  $n_3$  (resp.  $n_1n_6$  at  $n_1$ ). Then the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights around 4valent vertices  $n_1, n_2, n_3, n_4$  are determined in terms of *a* and *b*. We see that  $a, b \neq 0, -1$ . Looking at the compatibility of the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights around  $n_7$  and  $n_8$ , we see that  $\{n_4, n_7, n_5\}$  and  $\{n_2, n_8, n_6\}$  are collinear. Then we have a(b+1) = b(a+1) = -1, *a* contradiction, since  $a \neq -1$  and  $b \neq -1$ .

**Lemma 9.21.** A weakly minimal admissible N-weighting on the triangulation [8-14] is either [8 - 14'] or [8 - 14''] of Theorem 9.6 up to isomorphism.

*Proof.* The triangulation can be written in a more symmetric from again.



103 First look at the 5-valent  $n_3$ ,  $n_4$ ,  $n_5$  around  $n_1$  (1). If  $\{n_3, n_4, n_5\}$  are collinear, then they are on a great circle. Look at the weighted link of  $n_6$ . Because of the 3-valent vertex  $n_2$ ,  $\{n_5, n_6, n_8\}$  and  $\{n_4, n_6, n_7\}$  are not collinear  $\{n_7, n_6, n_8\}$  are not collinear, since otherwise they would be on a great circle disjoint from the other great circle  $n_3, n_4, n_5, n_3$ . Thus by symmetry we may assume that  $\{n_2, n_6, n_5\}$  are collinear. Look at the weighted link of  $n_7$ . If  $\{n_2, n_7, n_5\}$  were collinear, then  $n_2, n_5$  would be antipodal, a contradiction, since  $n_2$  is not on the great circle  $n_3n_4n_5n_3$ . For the same reason as above, we thus conclude that  $\{n_2, n_7, n_3\}$  and  $\{n_2, n_8, n_4\}$  are collinear. These collinearity condition determine a unique admissible double  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weighting with two integral parameters, which gives rise to the *N*-weighting [8 - 14''] of Theorem 9.6.

(2) By (1) and the symmetry around  $n_1$ , we need to consider two cases:

(i)  $\{n_1, n_3, n_8\}, \{n_1, n_4, n_8\}$  and  $\{n_1, n_5, n_6\}$  are collinear. Let *b* be the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weight around  $n_1$ . Then the weighted link of  $n_3$  is completely determined in terms of *b*.

By the compatibility of the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weights around  $n_3$ , the weighted link of  $n_8$  has weight 0 at  $n_3$ , hence  $\{n_4, n_8, n_7\}$  are collinear, a contradiction.

104

(ii)  $\{n_1, n_3, n_7\}$ ,  $\{n_1, n_4, n_8\}$  and  $\{n_1, n_5, n_6\}$  are collinear. Again let *b* be the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weighted around  $n_1$ . The collinearity condition so far determine some the the double  $\mathbb{Z}$  – weights. By our argument (1) applied to  $n_2$  instead of  $n_1$ , we conclude easily that  $\{n_2, n_8, n_4\}$ ,  $\{n_2, n_6, n_5\}$  and  $\{n_2, n_7, n_3\}$  are collinear. We thus get a unique admissible double  $\mathbb{Z}$ -weighting with an integral parameter, which gives to the *N*-weighting [8 - 14'] of Theorem 9.6.

We thus conclude the proof of Theorem 9.6.

**Remark**. By repeated application of Corollary 9.2 we determined all admissible *N*-weightings on the *icosahedral* triangulation of  $S^2$ . Apparently, there are 32 different admissible *N*-weightings, some of which integral parameters, as in the table below, although some of them might be redundant because of the symmetric nature of the triangulation.



Some of them are projective and some others are not. The weak version of our conjecture at the beginning of this section holds for all of them.

Since all the vertices are 5-valent, these admissible *N*-weightings are automatically weakly minimal. In the table below let  $\{n, n'n''\}$  be a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis of *N* and *a*, *b*, *c*, *d* $\epsilon$ ,  $\mathbb{Z}$ 

 $n_1$   $n_2$   $n_3$   $n_4$   $n_5$   $n_6$   $n_7$   $n_8$   $n_9$   $n_{10}$   $n_{11}$  $n_{12}$ 

(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)
-n + bn' + cn'	-n' + bn''	n-n'+an''	-n + (a+1)n' + bn''	n-an'-n''
-n' + an''	-n + an' + cn''	-n'	n'	n
$-n^{\prime\prime}$	<i>n</i> ′′	<i>n</i> ′′	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	n'
n' - n''	n	n	-n + an' + cn''	n'-n''
n'	$n - n^{\prime\prime}$	$n - n^{\prime\prime}$	-n + an' + (c+1)n''	$-n^{\prime\prime}$
n''	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	<i>n</i> ′′	-n'
n - n'	n + n'	n + n'	-n'	-n + n' + bn''
n	$n+n-n^{\prime\prime}$	n'	-n'+n''	-n
$n-n^{\prime}+n^{\prime\prime}$	$n^{\prime}-n^{\prime\prime}$	-n' + bn' + cn''	n	cn - n' + n''
n-2n'+an''	-n + (a+1)n' + cn''	-n+(b+1)n'(c+1)n''	$n-n-n^{\prime\prime}$	<i>n</i> ′′
$n-n^{\prime}-n^{\prime\prime}$	n'n''	n' + n''	-n'-n''	-n+n'+(b+1)n''
n - n'	n'	2n' + n''	n - n'	-n + n''

	(6)	(7)	(8)	(9)
$n_1$	-n + bn' + cn''	-n' + bn' + cn''	-n + bn + an''	n'-n''
$n_2$	n'	<i>n</i> ′′	n' - n''	-n+bn'+(c-1)n''
$n_3$	<i>n</i> ′′	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	-n+bn'+(c+1)n''	n'
$n_4$	-n + (b-1)n' + (a+c)n''	-n+bn'+(c-1)n''	-n' + (a+1)n''	n
$n_5$	-n' + (a-1)n''	n'-n''	-n'+n''	$n - n^{\prime\prime}$
$n_6$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	n'	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$
$n_7$	n' + an''	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	n - n' + an''	n - n' + an''
$n_8$	$n-2n^{\prime\prime}$	$n - n^{\prime\prime}$	n - n'	-n' + an''
<b>n</b> 9	n + n' - n''	n	$-n^{\prime}+n^{\prime}+n^{\prime\prime}$	n + (b-1)n' + (a+c)n''
$n_{10}$	n	n-n'+(a+1)n''	n'	-n + bn' + cn''
$n_{11}$	-n' + (a+1)n''	-n' - n''	<i>n</i> ′′	<i>n''</i>
<i>n</i> <sub>12</sub>	$n - n^{\prime\prime}$	n - n' + an''	n	-n + (a+1)n''

1
2
90

	(10)	(11)	(12)	(13)	(14)
12.	n n' + an''	an n' (h+1)n''	an n' n''	n + an' + bn''	n n' + an''
$n_1$	n - n + un	un = n = (b + 1)n	un - n - n	-n + un + bn	n - n + un
$n_2$	-n' + (a+1)n''	-n - bn''	n - n'	$-n + (b+1)n^{\prime\prime}$	n
$n_3$	n	n	-n	n'	<i>n''</i>
$n_4$	$n - n^{\prime\prime}$	$n - n^{\prime\prime}$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	n' - n''	-n'
$n_5$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	$n - n^{\prime\prime}$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	-n' - n''
$n_6$	-n' + an''	-n	n	-n'	$-n^{\prime\prime}$
$n_7$	n' - n''	n'-n''	n' - n''	n	-n
$n_8$	-n + bn' + cn''	-n + n' + bn''	n'	$n-n^{\prime}(b+1)n^{\prime\prime}$	$-n-n^{\prime\prime}$
$n_9$	-n + bn' + (c+1)n''	-n + n'(b+1)n''	n' + n''	n - n' - bn''	$-n+n^{\prime}-n^{\prime\prime}$
$n_{10}$	<i>n''</i>	<i>n''</i>	<i>n</i> ′′	<i>n</i> ′′	n'
$n_{11}$	n'	n'	-n + n' + bn''	n + n'	-n + bn'n''
$n_{12}$	-n+(b+1)n'+cn''	-n + 2n + bn''	-n+2n'+bn''	$n + n^{\prime\prime}$	-n + n'

	(15)	(16)	(17)	(18)	(19)
$n_1$	n-n'+an''	n + n'an''	n + n' + an''	n + n' + an''	n
$n_2$	n	n	n'	n	$n-n^{\prime}-(a-1)n^{\prime\prime}$
$n_3$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	<i>n</i> ′′	<i>n</i> "	<i>n</i> ′′	<i>n</i> ′′
$n_4$	$-n^{\prime}-n^{\prime\prime}$	n' + n''	$n + n^{\prime\prime}$	n' + n''	$n + n^{\prime} - n^{\prime\prime}$
$n_5$	-n'	n'	n	n'	-n' - 2n''
$n_6$	<i>n</i> ′′′	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$
$n_7$	$-n-n^{\prime}-n^{\prime\prime}$	-n + bn'	-n'	- <i>n</i>	n'-n''
$n_8$	-n	$-n-n^{\prime\prime}$	-n' - n''	$-n-n^{\prime\prime}$	-n+bn'+(a-1)n''
$n_9$	n + n' + n''	n - n'	-n + bn' - n''	n-n'-n''	-n'
$n_{10}$	n'	-n' + n''	-n	-n'	-n + (a+1)n''
$n_{11}$	-n - n''	-n + bn' + n''	-n-n'	$-n+n^{\prime\prime}+b(n^{\prime}+n^{\prime\prime})$	n'
$n_{12}$	-n + n' + b(n + n' + n')	-n'	$-n+(b-1)n^\prime-n^{\prime\prime}$	-n' - n''	-n + bn' + an''

-
10

	(20)	(21)	(22)	(23)	(24)	(25)
$n_1$	-n' + an''	<i>n</i> ′′	n	n	n + n' + an''	-n + an' + (b+1)n''
$n_2$	-n-2n'	$-n - n^{\prime} + (a+1)n^{\prime\prime}$	-n - n + an''	-n-n'+(a+1)n''	$n + n^{\prime\prime}$	-n + an' + bn'' + c(n' - n'')
$n_3$	$n^{\prime\prime}$	-n'	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	$n^{\prime}-n^{\prime\prime}$
$n_4$	$n + n^{\prime\prime}$	n - n' - an''	n + n'	n + n'	n + 2n' + an''	n'
$n_5$	n	n	n' + n''	n' + n''	n' + n''	<i>n</i> ′′
$n_6$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	n'	<i>n</i> ′′	<i>n</i> ′′′	n''	-n' + n''
$n_7$	2n + n' + n''	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	n'	n'	n'	n
$n_8$	n + n'	$n + n^{\prime} - n^{\prime\prime}$	-n + n' + an''	-n + n' + an''	- <i>n</i>	n - n' + (d+1)n''
$n_9$	n' - n''	2n' - n''	-n + an''	$-n + an^{\prime\prime}$	-2n - n'	-n'
$n_{10}$	-n - n'	-n + an''	n' - n''	n'-2n''	-n - n'	- <i>n</i> ′′
$n_{11}$	n'	-n + (a-1)n''	n+2n'-n''	n+2n'-n''	n' - n''	$n - n^{\prime\prime}$
$n_{12}$	-n + n' - n''	n' - n''	2n - n''	n' - n''	-n + n' - n''	n - n + dn''

	(26)	(27)	(28)	(29)	(30)	(31)	(32)
$n_1$	-n + an' + bn''	-n + 2n''	n'-n''	n' + 2n''	n-n'+2n''	3n' - n''	n - n' - n''
$n_2$	-n' + cn''	-n - n' + n''	$-n - n^{\prime\prime}$	-n + 2n''	$2n + n^{\prime\prime}$	-n + n' + 2n''	n - n'
$n_3$	-n + an' + (b+1)n''	-n'	n'	n' + n''	-n + n''	2n' - n''	n
$n_4$	n'	$n-n^{\prime}-n^{\prime\prime}$	$n - n^{\prime\prime}$	n	<i>n</i> ′′	n - n'	$n - n^{\prime\prime}$
$n_5$	n'-n''	<i>n</i> ′′	$n-2n^{\prime\prime}$	$n + n^{\prime\prime}$	$n + 2n^{\prime\prime}$	n	$n-n^{\prime}-2n^{\prime\prime}$
$n_6$	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	n'	-n'	$n^{\prime\prime}$	$n + n^{\prime\prime}$	n'	-n'-n''
$n_7$	n	2n - n'	-n' + 2n''	-n - n'n''	n' + 2n''	$-n - n^{\prime} + n^{\prime\prime}$	n + n' - n''
$n_8$	$n - n^{\prime\prime}$	n	-n'+n''	-n' + n''	n' + n''	n + n''	n'
$n_9$	n - n' + dn''	2n' - n''	-n	-n - n' + n''	n'	$n^{\prime\prime}$	-n - n' - n''
$n_{10}$	-n' + (c+1)n''	-n	n' + n''	-n + n''	n	-n + 2n''	$n + n^{\prime\prime}$
$n_{11}$	<i>n</i> ′′	$-n^{\prime\prime}$	n	n'	-n - n''	n' - n''	2n + n' - n''
$n_{12}$	n-n'+(d+1)n''	-n + n' - n''	$-n + n^{\prime\prime}$	-n - n'	-n - n' - n''	$-n-n^{\prime}+2n^{\prime\prime}$	<i>n</i> ′′

# **Chapter 2**

# Applications

Mumford et al. [63, Chap. 2] generalized the notion of tours embedding 111 to that of *toroidal embeddings*. Using this they proved, among other things, the important semi-stable reduction theorem is characteristic 0. Here we are concerned with more elementary applications of tours embedding.

In this chapter we restrict ourselves to tours embedding over the field  $\mathbb{C}$  of complex numbers, although some of the result have interesting analogues over fields with non-archimedean rank one valuation.

## 10 Manifolds with corners associated to torus embeddings

Let  $U(1) = \{z \in \mathbb{C}; | z | = 1\}$  be the *I*-dimensional unitary group, i.e. *I*-dimensional real torus. Then the *r*-dimensional algebraic torus  $T = (\mathbb{C}^*)^r$  has the *r*-dimensional real torus  $CT = (U(1))^r$  as the maximal compact subgroup such that

$$T/CT \cong (\mathbb{R}_{>0})^r \cong \mathbb{R}^r$$

where  $\mathbb{R}_{>_0}$  is the multiplicative group of positive real numbers.

Here is a coordinates-free description, which will be useful for torus embeddings. Recall that  $\mathbb{R}_0$  is the set of non-negative real numbers. We

have the valuation

ord : 
$$\mathbb{C} \xrightarrow{|} \mathbb{R} \to \mathbb{R}_0 \xrightarrow{-\log} \mathbb{R} \cup \{\infty\}$$

112 which induces a homomorphism

ord : 
$$\mathbb{C}^* \xrightarrow{|} \mathbb{R}_{\geq_0} \xrightarrow{-\log}_{\sim} \mathbb{R}$$
.

Let  $N \cong \mathbb{Z}^r$  be a free  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module of rank *r* and let *M* be its dual. Then as in §. 1

$$T_N = N \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{C}^* = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(M, \mathbb{C}^*)$$

is an *r*-dimensional algebraic torus over  $\mathbb{C}$ .

**Definition.** We denote by  $CT_N$  the compact (real) torus

$$CT_N = N \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} U(1) = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(M, U(1)).$$

The valuation ord applied to the second factor thus induces a surjection

ord : 
$$T_N = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(M, \mathbb{C}*) \xrightarrow[]{-\log}{} \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(M, \mathbb{R}_{>0})$$
  
 $\xrightarrow[]{\sim}{} \xrightarrow{\sim}{} \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(M, \mathbb{R}) = N_{\mathbb{R}}$ 

whose kernel is  $CT_N$ , thus we have

ord : 
$$T_N/CT_N \rightarrow N_{\mathbb{R}}$$
.

Let  $(N, \triangle)$  be an r.p.p.decomposition. Then  $CT_N$  acts on the corresponding tours embedding  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle)$  endowed with the *classical* (*Hausdorff*) topology instead of the Zariski topology. We then adopt the following definition for the notion introduced by Mumford et al. [61, Chap. 1, §. 1].

Definition. We denote by

ord : 
$$T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle) \to Mc(N, \triangle) = T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle)/CT_N$$

the quotient space with respect to the classical topology and call it the *manifold with corners* associated to  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle)$ 

113 It is indeed a manifold with corners in the usual sense (cf. Borel-Serre [4]) if  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle)$  is non-singular. By Theorem 4.2,  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle)$  is the union of affine open sets

$$U(\sigma) = \operatorname{Hom}_{unit.semigr}(\check{\sigma} \cap M, \mathbb{C})$$

with  $\sigma$  running through  $\triangle$ , hence  $Mc(N, \triangle)$  is the union of its open sets

ord : 
$$U(\sigma)/CT_N \xrightarrow{|} Hom_{u.s.g}(\check{\sigma} \cap M, \mathbb{R}_o)$$
  
 $\xrightarrow{-\log} Hom_{u.s.g}(\check{\sigma} \cap M, \mathbb{R} \cup \{\infty\}).$ 

The second description shows that  $U(\sigma)/CT_N$  is isomorphic to  $(\mathbb{R}_o)^s \times (\mathbb{R}_{>_o})^{r-s}$  for some *s* if  $\sigma$  is non-singular.

**Proposition 10.1.** For an r.p.p.decomposition  $(N, \triangle)$  the associated manifold with corners  $Mc(N, \triangle)$  has an action of  $N_{\mathbb{R}} = \mathbb{R} \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} N$  and is an equivariant partial compactification of  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  with the orbit decomposition.

$$Mc(N, \Delta) = \prod_{\sigma \in \Delta} \operatorname{orb}(\sigma) / CT_N$$

such that

$$\operatorname{orb}(\sigma)/CT_N \xrightarrow{\operatorname{ord}} N_{\mathbb{R}}/(\mathbb{R} - subspace generated by \sigma).$$

1

In particular

$$\dim_{\mathbb{C}} \operatorname{orb}(\sigma) = \dim_{\mathbb{R}} \operatorname{orb}(\sigma) / CT_N = \operatorname{rank} N - \dim \sigma.$$

*Proof.* The first part is obvious, since  $Mc(N, \triangle)$  has an action of  $T_N/CT_N = N_{\mathbb{R}}$ . Since  $\operatorname{orb}(\sigma) = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(\sigma^{\perp} \cap M, \mathbb{C}^*)$  by Theorem 4.2, we see that

$$\operatorname{orb}(\sigma)/CT_N \xrightarrow{\operatorname{orb}}_{\sim} \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(\sigma^{\perp} \cap M, R) = N_R/(R - \operatorname{subspace} gen^d \operatorname{by} \sigma).$$

A map h: $(N, \triangle) \rightarrow (N', \triangle')$  of *r.p.p.* decompositions obviously gives 114 rise to an equivariant continuous map

$$Mc(h): Mc(N, \triangle) \to Mc(N', \triangle')$$

**Example (Mumford)** Consider the projective line  $\mathbb{P}_1(\mathbb{C})$ , which is the 2-sphere in the classical topology. It corresponds to the r.p.p. decomposition  $(N, \Delta) = (\mathbb{Z} \cdot \{\mathbb{R}_\circ, \{0\}, -\mathbb{R}_\circ\}).$ 

 $CT_N = U(1)$ , and the orbits under it are the circles of the same latitude. The quotient  $Mc(N, \Delta)$  is the closed interval, a compactification of the open interval isomorphic to  $N_{\mathbb{R}} = \mathbb{R}$ .



$$(N, \triangle)$$
  $\mathbb{P}_1(\mathbb{C}) \xrightarrow{\text{ord}} Mc(N, \triangle)$ 

**Example.** For a 2-dimensional  $(N, \triangle)$ ,  $Mc(N, \triangle)$  looks like this



115 We encounter many other examples later in §§. 11, 13, 14, 15. Since

the decomposition of  $Mc(N, \Delta)$  into  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$ -orbits faithfully reflects the incidence among the  $T_N$ -orbits of  $T_N$  emb ( $\Delta$ ) the pictures we can draw of  $Mc(N, \Delta)$  in dimensions 2 and 3 will give us a good geometric insight.

**Remark.** Over a field k with a non-archimedean rank one valuation

ord : 
$$k \to \mathbb{R} \cup \{\infty\}$$
,

we have an obvious analogue of  $Mc(N, \triangle)$ .

Although the following description of the fundamental group has nothing to do with the manifolds with corners, we state it here, since it will be very convenient later.

**Proposition 10.2** (Mumford). Let  $(N, \triangle)$  be an r.p.p.decomposition and let  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle)$  be the corresponding torus embedding over  $\mathbb{C}$  endowed with the classical topology. Then we have the following canonical description of the fundamental group.

$$\pi_1(T_N emb(\triangle)) = N/(the \ subgroup \ gen^{\underline{d}} \bigcup_{\sigma \in \triangle} (\sigma \cap N)).$$

*Proof.* For simplicity, let  $T = T_N$  and  $X = T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle)$ . We have a well-known isomorphism

$$N \xrightarrow{\sim} \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(U(1), T) = \pi_1(T)$$

which sends  $n \in N$  to the loop  $U(1) \ni u \to u^{<?, n>} \in \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(M, \mathbb{C}^*) = T$ , where  $\langle, \rangle : M \times N \to \mathbb{Z}$  is the dual pairing as before. By Theorem 4.2, X 116 is covered by  $U(\sigma) = \operatorname{Hom}_{u.s.g}(\check{\sigma} \cap M, \mathbb{C}) \supset T$  with  $\sigma$  running through  $\triangle$ . By generalized van Kampen's theorem in Olum [48], it is thus enough to show that the canonical homomorphism

$$N = \pi_1(T) \to \pi_1(U(\sigma))$$

is surjective with the subgroup N' generated by  $\sigma \cap N$  as the kernel. Note that N' is a direct summand of N. Since  $U(\sigma)$  is non-canonically isomorphic to the product of the algebraic torus  $(N/N') \otimes_{\mathbb{Z}} \mathbb{C}^*$  and the lower dimensional  $T_{N'}$ -embedding corresponding to  $\sigma$  considered as a cone in  $N'_R$ , it is obviously enough to show that  $U(\sigma)$  is simply connected if  $\sigma$  generates  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$ . First of all,  $N = \pi_1(T)$  is mapped surjectively onto  $\pi_1(U(\sigma))$ , since  $U(\sigma) - T$  is of real codimension  $\geq 2$  in  $U(\sigma)$ , by the so-called general position argument. On the other hand, for  $n \in \sigma \cap N$  and  $0 \leq \varepsilon \leq 1$ , the map

$$U(1) \ni u \mapsto (\varepsilon u)^{,n} \in \operatorname{Hom}_{u,s,g}(\check{\sigma} \cap M, \mathbb{C}) = U\sigma$$

establishes a homotopy which kills *n* in  $\pi_1(U(\sigma))$  as  $\varepsilon$  goes to 0, since  $\langle m, n \rangle \ge 0$  for  $m \in \check{\sigma} \cap M$ . Since  $\sigma \cap N$  generates *N* as a group, we are done.

For illustrative examples, we refer the reader to §§. 13, 14.

### 11 Complex tori

117 The following "multiplicative" formulation of complex tori and polarizations was given by Tate in his lecture in July 1967. It was used effectively by Mumford et al. [61]. In this way, we can also formulate their analogues in the non-archimedean case, or even in the ideal-adic case. (cf. Morikawa [36], McCabe [33], Mumford [38] and Gerritzen [11].)

Given a *g*-dimensional complex torus *X*, there exists a symmetric  $g \times g$  matrix  $\tau = (\tau_{jk})$  with the positive definite imaginary part im $(\tau)$  such that

$$X = \mathbb{C}^g / (\mathbb{Z}^g + \mathbb{Z}\tau_1 + \dots + \mathbb{Z}\tau_g)$$

where  $\tau_1, \ldots, \tau_g$  are the row vectors of  $\tau$ . We have a surjective homomorphism

$$\mathbb{C}^g \to (\mathbb{C}^*)^g$$

sending  $(z_1, \ldots, z_g)$  to  $(\exp(2\pi i z_1), \ldots, \exp(2\pi i z_g))$ . Let  $\Gamma$  be the image of the lattice, which is a free abelian subgroup of  $(\mathbb{C}^*)^g$  of rank g such that

$$X = (\mathbb{C}^*)^g / \Gamma.$$
## 11. Complex tori

This description is very efficient, since it gets rid of the redundancy  $\mathbb{Z}^{g}$ . It also fits in nicely with torus embeddings and will give us good insight into the construction of degenerating families. Here is the *coordinate-free* approach:

Let  $N \cong \mathbb{Z}^g$  be a free abelian group of rank g with the dual M. As 118 before, let  $T = T_N = \text{Hom}_{gr}(M, \mathbb{C}^*)$  be the algebraic torus.

**Definition.** A *period* for  $T = \text{Hom}_{gr}(M, \mathbb{C}^*)$  is a homomorphism

$$q: \Gamma \to T, \quad \gamma \mapsto q^{\gamma}$$

from a free  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module  $\Gamma$  of rank g, which is injective with compact cokernel  $X = T/q^{\Gamma}$ , a complex torus.

Composed with the valuation  $\operatorname{ord}(?) = -\log |?| : \mathbb{C}^* \to \mathbb{R}, q$  gives rise to a homomorphism

ord 
$$\circ q : \Gamma \to N_{\mathbb{R}} = Mc(N, \{0\}).$$

The injectivity and the compactness of the cokernel of q are equivalent to those of ord  $\circ q$ .

For  $\gamma \in \Gamma$  and  $m \in M$ , let  $Q(\gamma, m) = q^{\gamma}(m) \in \mathbb{C}^*$ . Thus we have a non-degenerate biadditive pairing

$$Q:\Gamma\times M\to\mathbb{C}^*.$$

**Definition.** For a period  $q: \Gamma \to T = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(M, \mathbb{C}^*)$ , let

$$\hat{q}: M \to \hat{T} = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(\Gamma, \mathbb{C}^*)$$

be the period given by  $\hat{q}^m(\gamma) = q^{\gamma}(m)$ . We call  $\hat{X} = \hat{T}/\hat{q}^M$  the *dual* complex torus.

Recall that  $m \in M$  gives rise to the character  $T \ni t \mapsto e(m)(t) \in \mathbb{C}^*$ (cf. §. 1). Consider the *formal Laurent series* 

$$\theta(t) = \sum_{m \in M} a_m e(m)(t)$$

for  $t \in T$  and  $a_m \in \mathbb{C}$ . The following is well-known:

**Proposition 11.1.** The ring Ho1(T) of holomorphic functions consists 119 of the Laurent series which are convergent everywhere on T. The units in Ho1(T) are of the form

ae(m) for  $a \in \mathbb{C}^*$  and  $m \in M$ .

It is also well-known that the *positive divisors* on the complex torus  $X = T/q^{\Gamma}$  are in one to one correspondence with the  $\Gamma$ -invariant positive divisors on T, which are of the form div( $\theta$ ) for  $0 \neq \theta \in Ho1(T)$ . From what we saw above, the  $\Gamma$ -invariance means that there exist maps

$$c: \Gamma \to \mathbb{C}^*$$
 and  $\Gamma \to M$ 

such that

 $\theta(q^{\gamma}t)c(\gamma)t^{\alpha(\gamma)} = \theta(t) \text{ for all } \gamma \in \Gamma.$ (\*)

Such  $\theta(t)$  is called a *theta function*. We see immediately the following:

**Lemma 11.2.** The pair  $(\alpha, c)$  satisfies the following conditions and is called a theta type for the period q.

(i)  $\alpha : \Gamma \to M$  is a Q-symmetric homomorphism, i.e.

$$\alpha(\gamma + \gamma') = \alpha(\gamma) \cdot \alpha(\gamma')$$
 and  $Q(\gamma', \alpha(\gamma)) = Q(\gamma, \alpha(\gamma'))$ 

(ii)  $c: \Gamma \to \mathbb{C}^*$  is a quadratic character with respect to  $Q(?, \alpha(?))$ , i.e.

$$c(\gamma + \gamma')/c(\gamma)c(\gamma') = Q(\gamma, \alpha(\gamma')).$$

Given theta functions  $\theta(t)$  and  $\theta'(t)$  with the theta types  $(\alpha, c)$  and 120  $(\alpha', c')$ , respectively, we see that  $\theta(t)\theta'(t)$  is of the theta type  $(\alpha + \alpha', cc')$ . Moreover, div $(\theta)$  and div  $(\theta')$  give rise to linearly equivalent divisors on X if and only if there exists  $m \in M$  such that

$$\alpha' = \alpha$$
 and  $c' = c \cdot Q(?, m)$ .

Thus we conclude:

11. Complex tori

Proposition 11.3. We have an isomorphism

 $Pic(X) = \{theta \ types \ (\alpha, c)\}/\{(0, Q(?, m)); m \in M\}$ 

and an exact sequence

 $0 \to \hat{X} \to Pic(X) \to \operatorname{Hom}_{O-symm}(\Gamma, M) \to 0.$ 

Given a theta type  $(\alpha, c)$ , let  $\Gamma(\alpha, c)$  denote the corresponding line bundle on *X*.

**Proposition 11.4.** *Given a theta type*  $(\alpha, c)$  *for q, we have a homomorphism* 

$$\Lambda(L(\alpha, c)): X \to \hat{X}$$

induced by  $\circ \alpha : T = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(M, \mathbb{C}^*) \to \hat{T} = \operatorname{Hom}_{gr}(\Gamma, \mathbb{C}^*).$ 

(1)  $\alpha : \Gamma \to M$  is injective if and only if ord  $\circ Q(?, \alpha(?)) : \Gamma \times \Gamma \to \mathbb{R}$  is non-degenerate. In this case,  $\Lambda(\alpha, c)$  is an isogeny whose degree is equal to the order deg( $\alpha$ ) of coker [ $\alpha : \Gamma \to M$ ], and  $L(\alpha, c)$  is called *non-degenerate*.

(2) If, moreover,  $\operatorname{ord} \circ Q(?, \alpha(?)) : \Gamma \times \Gamma \to \mathbb{R}$  is positive definite, then  $L(\alpha', c)$  is an ample line bundle, and  $\alpha$  is called a *polarization*. In this case, the theta functions of the theta type  $(\alpha, c)$  form a  $\mathbb{C}$ -vector space of dimension deg $(\alpha)$ . The polarization is *principal* if and only if

 $\alpha: \Gamma \xrightarrow{\sim} M$ , i.e.  $\Lambda(L(\alpha, c)): X \xrightarrow{\sim} \hat{X}$ .

When we have a principal polarization  $\alpha$  on *X*, we can identify  $\Gamma$  with *M* via  $\alpha$ . Thus a principally polarized *g*-dimensional complex torus *X* is determined by a symmetric biadditive map

$$Q: M \times M \to \mathbb{C}^*$$

with  $P = \text{ord} \circ Q : M \times M \to \mathbb{R}$  positive definite so that

$$X = T / \{Q(m, ?); m \in M\}.$$

Let us fix  $M = \mathbb{Z}^g$  with the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis  $\{m_1, \ldots, m_g\}$ . Let

 $PdS ym(M \times M, \mathbb{C}^*) = \begin{cases} \text{symmetric biadditive } Q : M \times M \to \mathbb{C}^* \\ \text{with ord } \circ Q \text{ positive definite} \end{cases}$ 

We then have a *versal family* over  $PdS ym(M \times M, \mathbb{C}^*)$  of principally polarized *g*-dimensional complex tori, whose total space is the quotient of  $T \times PdS ym(M \times M, \mathbb{C}^*)$ , with  $T = \text{Hom}_{gr}(M, \mathbb{C}^*)$ , by the action of *M* defined by

 $(t, Q) \mapsto (Q(m, ?)t, Q) \text{ for } m \in M.$ 

 $Pdsym(M \times M, \mathbb{C}^*)$  is an open subset of

Sym  $(M \times M, \mathbb{C}^* = \{\text{symmetric biadditive } Q : M \times M \to \mathbb{C}^*\}$ , which, by component wise multiplication, is a g(g+1)/2-dimensional algebraic torus over  $\mathbb{C}$  with the character group

 $S^{2}(M)$  = the symmetric product of *M* of degree 2 and the group of one parameter subgroups

$$\operatorname{Sym}(M \times M, \mathbb{Z}) = \{ \operatorname{symmetric bilinear maps} M \times M \to \mathbb{Z} \}.$$

As usual, let  $S_g$  be the Siegel upper half plane of complex symmetric gxg matrices  $\tau = (\tau_{jk})$  with the positive definite imaginary part  $Im(\tau) > 0$ . Then an element

$$\begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix}$$

of the Siegel modular group  $S p_g(\mathbb{Z})$  acts on  $S_g$  via  $\tau \mapsto (A\tau + B)(C\tau + D)^{-1}$ . The map  $\tau \mapsto Q$  defined by

$$Q(m_j, m_k) = \exp(2\pi i \tau_{jk})$$

establishes an embedding

$$S_g/\{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & B\\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \in Sp_g(\mathbb{Z})\} \xrightarrow{\sim} PdSym(M \times M, \mathbb{C}^*) \subset Sym(M \times M, \mathbb{C}^*).$$

The first step in compactifying the moduli space of principally polarized complex tori in Mumford et al. [61] is to choose a nice  $Sym(M \times M, \mathbb{C}^*)$ -embedding corresponding to an *admissible* r.p.p.decomposition  $(Sym(M \times M, \mathbb{Z}, \Delta)$  which is invariant under the canonical action of  $Aut(M) \cong GL_g(\mathbb{Z})$  with  $\Delta/Aut(M)$  finite and fills up the convex hull in  $Sym(M \times M, \mathbb{R})$  of the set of positive semi-definite integral forms.

The Delony-Voronoi decomposition is such a decomposition and was used by Namikawa [46] for his Delony-Voroni compactification of

100

## 11. Complex tori

**123** the moduli space, over which he could even construct a family of what he calls *stable quasi-abelian varieties*. Here is a brief coordinate-free account of the part relevant to us:

Let  $P : M \times M \to \mathbb{R}$  be a positive semi-definite bilinear form. *P* defines a pseudo-norm  $||x||_p = P(x, x)^{1/2}$  on  $M_{\mathbb{R}}$ . For  $x \in M_{\mathbb{R}}$  let

$$w(x, P) = \{m \in M; ||x - m||_P = \min_{m' \in M} ||x - m'||_P\}$$

The convex hull D(x, P) in  $M_{\mathbb{R}}$  of w(x, P) is an (unbounded if *P* is not definite) polyhedron in  $M_{\mathbb{R}}$  and is called a *Delong cell*. The set  $Del(M_{\mathbb{R}}, P)$  of Delony cells is the *Delony decomposition* and is invariant under the translation action of *M*.

On the other hand,

$$V(x, P) = \{ y \in N_{\mathbb{R}}; \langle m', y \rangle + P(m', m' + 2m) \ge$$
  
for all  $m' \in M$  and all $m \in w(x, P) \}$ 

is a polyhedron in  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  and is called a *Voronoi cell*. Let  $P^*: M_{\mathbb{R}} \to N_{\mathbb{R}}$ be the canonical linear map defined by  $x' \mapsto P(x', ?)$ . Then V(x, P) is the image under  $-2P^*$  of  $\{x' \in M_{\mathbb{R}}; \|x' - m\|_P = \min_{m' \in M} \|x' - m'\|_P$  for all  $m \in w(x, P)$ . The set  $Vor(N_{\mathbb{R}}, P)$  of Voronoi cells is the *Voronoi decomposition* of the image of  $P^*: M_{\mathbb{R}} \to N_{\mathbb{R}}$  and is invariant under the translation action of  $2P^*(M)$ . This is the original definition by Voronoi and is different from the usual one, for instance in Oda-Seshadri [49].

**Definition.** Positive semi-definite bilinear forms  $P, P' : M \times M \to \mathbb{R}$  124 are *equivalent* if

$$\operatorname{Del}(M_{\mathbb{R}}, P) = \operatorname{Del}(M_{\mathbb{R}}, P').$$

An equivalence class  $\sum$  of positive semi-definite forms is a polyhedral cone, a *Delony-Voronoi cone*, in  $Sym(M \times M, \mathbb{R})$ . Let Del-Vor be the set of such equivalence classes. Then we have an admissible r.p.p.decomposition

$$(\operatorname{Sym}(M \times M, \mathbb{Z}, \operatorname{Del-Vor}),$$

the *Delony-Voronoi decomposition*, which is Aut(M)-invariant with Del-Vor/Aut(M) finite and which fills up the convex hull of the set of positive semi-definite integral forms.

2. Applications

On the other hand, for a Delony-Voronoi cone  $\sum$  and a Delony cell *D* of the Delony decomposition common to forms in  $\sum$ ,

$$\sigma(\sum, D) = (y, P) \in N_{\mathbb{R}} \times \sum; \langle m', y \rangle + P(m', m' + 2m) \ge 0$$
  
for all  $m' \in M$  and all  $m \in M \cap D$ 

is a polyhedral cone in  $N_{\mathbb{R}} \oplus Sym(M \times M, \mathbb{R})$ . The set Mixed of these cones, *mixed cones*, gives rise to an r.p.p.decomposition

 $(N \oplus \operatorname{Sym}(M \times M, \mathbb{Z}), \operatorname{Mixed})$ 

called the mixed decomposition.

The second projection induces a map of r.p.p.decompositions

 $p_2: (N \oplus \text{Sym}(M \times M, \mathbb{Z}), Mixed) \rightarrow (Sym(M \times M, \mathbb{Z}), Del - vor).$ 

125

Thus we have an equivariant morphism of torus embeddings

$$\rho: T_{N \oplus \operatorname{Sym}(M \times M, \mathbb{Z}} \operatorname{emb}(\operatorname{Mixed}) \to T_{\operatorname{Sym}(M \times M, \mathbb{Z}} \operatorname{emb}(\operatorname{Del} - \operatorname{Vor})$$

a "family of semi-universal coverings" of Namikawa [46, §. 8].

For various reasons (cf. ibid. (13.8)), it is more convenient to consider the *level*  $2\nu$  *action* ( $\nu \ge 1$ ) of the lattice M on  $\mathcal{B}$ . It is induced by the action of M on  $N \oplus Sym(M \times M, \mathbb{Z})$  by

$$(y, P) \mapsto (y + P(2\nu m, ?), P) \text{ for } m \in M$$

which preserves the mixed decomposition. On  $T \times \text{PdSym}(M \times M, \mathbb{C}) \subset \mathcal{B}$ , it coincides with the action

$$(t, Q) \mapsto (Q(2\nu m, ?)t, Q) \text{ for } m \in M.$$

Let  $\mathscr{X}^{\circ} \subset \mathscr{X}$  be the interior of the closure of PdSym  $(M \times M, \mathbb{C}^*)$ . Then  $\mathscr{B}^{\circ} = \rho^{-1}(\mathscr{X}^{\circ})$  is the inverse image under ord of the open set in  $Mc(N \oplus \text{Sym} (M \times M, \mathbb{Z}), \text{Mixed})$  consisting of  $N_{\mathbb{R}} \times \text{PdSym} (M \times M, \mathbb{R})$  and the boundary at infinity.

## 11. Complex tori

The level 2v action of M induced on the open set, hence also its action on  $\mathcal{B}^\circ$ , is properly discontinuous and fixed point free. Thus we have a family

 $\omega^{(\nu)}: a^{(\nu)} = B^{\circ}/(\text{level } 2\nu \text{ action of } M) \to \mathscr{X}^{\circ}$ 

of "stable quasi-abelian varieties of dimension g and of degree v" of Namikawa [46, §. 13].

We now look more specifically at *one parameter degenerations* of **126** principally polarized *g*-dimensional complex tori which was studied in detail by Mumford [38], Nakamura [44], [45] and Namikawa [46, §. 17]. See also Namikawa [47] for toroidal degenerations.

**Definition.** We denote by  $U = \{\lambda \in \mathbb{C}; |\lambda| < 1\}$  the open unit disk and  $U^* = U - \{0\}$  the punctured disk.

It will be more convenient later to think of  $U^*$  and U as open sets in  $T_{\mathbb{Z}\ell} \operatorname{emb}(\{\mathbb{R}_0\ell, \{0\}\}) = \mathbb{C}$  for a free  $\mathbb{Z}$ -module  $\mathbb{Z}\ell$  of rank one with the base  $\ell$  with

$$U = \operatorname{ord}^{-l}(\mathbb{R}_{>0}\ell \amalg \{\infty\})$$
$$U^* = \operatorname{ord}^{-l}(\mathbb{R}_{>0}\ell)$$

where  $Mc(\mathbb{Z}\ell, \{\mathbb{R}_o\ell, \{0\}\}) = \mathbb{R}\ell \amalg \{\infty\}$ .

As before, we fix  $M \cong \mathbb{Z}^g$  and its dual *N* and let  $T = T_N = \text{Hom}_{gr}(M, \mathbb{C}^*)$ . Given a family  $\pi^* : Y^* \to U^*$  of principally polarized *g*-dimensional complex tori, we are interested in extending it to a nice family  $\pi : Y \to U$  which is proper and flat.

The semi-stable reduction theorem allows us to replace U by its covering ramified at 0 and reduces the problem to the case of *unipotent monodromy*. (For details see Namikawa [46, §. 17]). We may thus assume that there exists a *homomorphic* map  $U \ni \lambda \mapsto Q_{\lambda} \in$  (the closure of PdSym( $M \times M$ ,  $\mathbb{C}^*$  in Sym( $M \times M$ ,  $\mathbb{C}^*$ )) with ord<sup>0</sup>  $Q_{\lambda}$  positive definite for  $\lambda \neq 0$ , and a positive semi-definite  $B \in Sym(M \times M, \mathbb{Z})$  such 127 that the restriction of ord<sup>0</sup>  $Q_0$  to { $x \in M_R$ ; B(x, x') = 0 for all  $x' \in M_R$ } is positive definite and that  $Y^*$  is the quotient of  $T \times U^*$  under the action of M defined for  $m \in M$  by

$$\tilde{f}_m(t,\lambda) = (Q_\lambda(m,?)\lambda^{B(m,?)}, t, \lambda).$$

Let  $\tilde{N} = N \oplus \mathbb{Z}\ell$  and consider the action of M on  $\tilde{N}$  defined for  $m \in M$  by

$$\tilde{h}_m(n) = n \text{ for } n \in N$$
  
 $\tilde{h}_m(\ell) = \ell + B(m, ?).$ 

Then  $\tilde{f}_m$  is the composite of the translation by  $(Q_{\lambda}(m, ?), 1) \in T_{\tilde{N}} = T \times \mathbb{C}^*$  and the automorphism of  $T_{\tilde{N}}$  as an algebraic group induced by  $\tilde{h}_m$ .

To make sure that there is a nice open set V below, let  $(\tilde{N}, \tilde{\Delta})$  be an r.p.p.decomposition invariant under  $\tilde{h}_m$  for all  $m \in M$  such that the union of cones in  $\tilde{\Delta}$  coincides with

$$\{0\} \cup \{B^*(M_{\mathbb{R}}) \times \mathbb{R}_{>0}\ell\},\$$

where  $B^* : M_{\mathbb{R}} \to N_{\mathbb{R}}$  is the linear map defined by  $B^*(x) = B(x, ?)$ . Such  $\tilde{\Delta}$  can be most easily described as the join of 0 with a polyhedral decomposition

$$\tilde{\Delta} \cap (B^*(M_{\mathbb{R}}) + \ell)$$

of the affine subspace  $B^*(M_{\mathbb{R}}) + \ell$  by bounded polyhedral invariant under the translation by the lattice  $\{B(m, ?); m \in M\}$ . It is a special case of torus embeddings over a discrete valuation ring in Mumford et al. [63, Chap.IV, §. 3].

Let  $V \subset T_{\tilde{N}} \operatorname{emb}(\tilde{\Delta})$  be the inverse image under ord of the union of  $N_{\mathbb{R}} \times \mathbb{R}_{>0}\ell$  and the boundary at infinity of  $Mc(\tilde{N}, \tilde{\Delta})$ . Then there exists a unique extension of the action of M onto V, denoted again by  $\tilde{f}_m$  for  $m \in M$ , which is properly discontinuous and fixed point free. Then

$$\pi: Y = V/{\{\tilde{f}_m; m \in M\}} \to U$$

is the sought-for extension of the family  $\pi^*: Y^* \to U^*$ .

An example of such  $\tilde{\Delta}$  was obtained by Namikawa [46] and Nakamura [44], which is of the following form:

$$\tilde{\Delta} = \{ \tilde{\sigma}(D); D \in Del(M_{\mathbb{R}}, B) \},\$$

104

## 11. Complex tori

i.e. of the Voronoi type, where

$$\tilde{\sigma}(D) = \{ (y, w\ell \in \tilde{N}_{\mathbb{R}} = \tilde{N}_{\mathbb{R}} \oplus \mathbb{R}\ell; \quad \begin{aligned} 2\langle m', y \rangle + wB(m', m' + 2m) \ge 0 \\ \text{for all } m' \in M \text{ and } m \in M \cap D \end{aligned} \}$$

For the relation of all these to the compactification of the generalized Jacobian varieties, we refer the reader to Namikawa [46, §.18] and Nakamura [44] in the  $\mathbb{C}$  case and to Oda-Seshadri [49] and Ishida [26] in the general case.

**Example 11.1.** (1) Elliptic curves (g = 1) In this case the versal family is already a one-parameter family. With the canonical principal polarization, an elliptic curve X over  $\mathbb{C}$  is of the following form: Let  $N = M = T = \mathbb{Z}$ . A period

$$q:\mathbb{Z}\to\mathbb{C}^*=T$$

is determined by the image  $\lambda = q^l \exp(2\pi i \tau) \in \mathbb{C}^*$  with  $0 < |\lambda| < 1$ , i.e. 129  $\operatorname{im}(\tau) > 0$ . Hence

$$X = X_{\lambda} = \mathbb{C}^* / \lambda^{\mathbb{Z}}$$

where  $\lambda^{\mathbb{Z}} = \{\lambda^a; a \in \mathbb{Z}\}$ . Dividing everything out by CT = U(1), we get

ord 
$$\circ q : \mathbb{Z} \to \mathbb{R} = N_{\mathbb{R}}$$

As before, let  $U = \{\lambda \mathbb{C}; |\lambda| < 1\}$  and  $U^* = U - \{0\}$ . Then we have a versal family

$$\pi^*: Y^* = (\mathbb{C}^* \times U^*) / \tilde{f}^{\mathbb{Z}} \to U^*$$

of elliptic curves  $X_{\lambda} = (\pi^*)^{-1}(\lambda)$ , where  $\tilde{f}$  is the automorphism of  $\mathbb{C}^* \times U^*$  defined by  $\tilde{f}(t, \lambda) = (\lambda t, \lambda)$ . This can be extended to a family

$$\pi: Y \to U$$

whose fiber over  $\lambda = 0$  is the rational curve with a node obtained by identifying 0 and  $\infty$  of  $\mathbb{P}_1$ . Indeed, let  $\tilde{N} = N \oplus \mathbb{Z}\ell$  with the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis  $\{n, \ell\}$ .  $\mathbb{C}^* \times U^*$  is the inverse image under ord of the upper half plane  $\mathbb{R} \times \mathbb{R}_{>0}\ell$  of  $Mc(\tilde{N}, \{0\}) = \tilde{N}_{\mathbb{R}}$ . Let  $\tilde{X} = T_{\tilde{N}}emb(\tilde{\Delta})$ , where  $\tilde{\Delta}$  consists of the faces of

$$\tilde{\sigma}_{\nu} = \mathbb{R}_o(n + \nu\ell) + \mathbb{R}_o(n + (\nu + 1)\ell)$$

with  $\nu$  running through  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Let  $\tilde{h}$  be the automorphism of  $\tilde{N}$  defined by  $\tilde{h}(n) = n$  and  $\tilde{h}(\ell) = \ell + n$ . Obviously  $\tilde{h}$  preserves  $\tilde{\Delta}$ , hence defines an automorphism  $\tilde{f}$  of  $\tilde{X}$ .  $Mc(\tilde{N}, \Delta)$  looks like the picture below and  $Mc(\tilde{h})$  (i) acts as the translation by wn for points of  $N_{\mathbb{R}} + w\ell$  and (ii) transforms the boundary components  $orb(\tilde{\sigma}_{\nu})/CT_{\tilde{N}}$  and  $orb(\mathbb{R}_o(n + \nu\ell))/CT_{\tilde{N}}$  at infinity to the next ones corresponding to  $\nu + 1$ .

Since the group generated by  $Mc(\tilde{h})$  thus acts properly discontinuously without fixed point on the "upper half", the group generated by  $\tilde{f}$  also acts properly discontinuously without fixed point on the open set  $V \subset \tilde{X}$  which is the inverse image under ord of the upper half of  $Mc(\tilde{N}, \tilde{\Delta})$ . Then the horizontal projection induces

$$\pi: Y = V/\tilde{f}^{\mathbb{Z}} \to U.$$

Note that  $\pi^{-1}(0)/CT$  is the circle obtained by identifying the two end points of a closed interval.

We refer the reader to Mumford et al. [61, Chap. 1. §. 4] for the certification of universal elliptic curves.



# 11. Complex tori



131

# (2) Principally polarized 2-dimensional complex tori

Let  $M = \mathbb{Z}^2$  with a  $\mathbb{Z}$ - basis  $\{m_1, m_2\}$  and let N the dual of M with the dual basis  $\{n_1, n_2\}$ . Then the Delony-Voronoi decomposition of Sym $(M \times M, \mathbb{R})$  consists of the Aut(M)-translates of

$$\sum_{3} = \mathbb{R}_{\circ}\ell_{1} + \mathbb{R}_{\circ}\ell_{2} + \mathbb{R}_{\circ}\ell_{3}$$

and its faces  $\sum_2 = \mathbb{R}_{\circ}\ell_1 + \mathbb{R}_{\circ}\ell_2$ ,  $\sum_1 = \mathbb{R}_{\circ}\ell_2$  and  $\sum_0 = 0$ , where  $\ell_1, ell_2, \ell_3 \in \text{Sym } M \times M, \mathbb{Z}$  are defined as follows:

$$\ell_1(m_1, m_1) = 1, \quad \ell_1(m_2, m_2) = 0, \quad \ell_1(m_1, m_2) = 0,$$
  

$$\ell_2(m_1, m_1) = 0, \quad \ell_1(m_2, m_2) = 0, \quad \ell_2(m_1, m_2) = 0,$$
  

$$\ell_3(m_1, m_1) = 1, \quad \ell_1(m_2, m_2) = 1, \quad \ell_3(m_1, m_2) = -1,$$

(cf. Namikawa [, 2.7)]). In  $S^2(M)$ ,  $\{m_1^2 + m_1m_2, m_2^2 + m_1m_2, -m_1m_2\}$  132 form the  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis dual to  $\{\ell_1, \ell_2, \ell_3\}$ . Thus the parameter space  $\mathfrak{X}^\circ$  of the family of semi-universal coverings is covered by the Aut(M)-translates of the open set isomorphic to the interior of the closure in  $\mathbb{A}_3$  of  $\{(\lambda_1, \lambda_2,$   $\lambda_3$   $\in \mathbb{A}_3$ ;  $\log |\lambda_1| \log |\lambda_2| + \log |\lambda_2| \log |\lambda_3| + \log |\lambda_3| \log |\lambda_1| > 0$ , and  $|\lambda_1 \lambda_3| < 1$ .

We now look at semi-stable one parameter degenerations of 2 - dimensional principally polarized complex tori. It is well-known that, up to the Aut(M)-equivalence, positive semi-definite  $B \in Sym(M \times M, \mathbb{Z})$  is of the following from:

(1)	B = 0		
(2)	$B(m_1,m_1)=0,$	$B(m_2,m_2)=b,$	$B(m_1,m_2)=0$
(3)	$B(m_1,m_1)=a,$	$B(m_2,m_2)=b,$	$B(m_1,m_2)=0$
(4)	$B(m_1, m_1) = a + c,$	$B(m_2, m_2) = b + c,$	$B(m_1, m_2) = -c$

for positive integers *a*, *b*, *c*. For simplicity, let  $\tilde{h}_1 = \tilde{h}_{m_1}$  and  $\tilde{h}_2 = \tilde{h}_{m_2}$ . They are the identity on  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$ .

In case (1), a decomposition  $\tilde{\Delta}$  satisfying our requirements is necessarily of the form  $\tilde{\Delta} = \{\{0\}, \mathbb{R}_o \ell\}.$ 

Hence  $V = T \times U$  and  $\pi^{-1}(0)$  is the complex torus

$$T/\{Q_0(m, ?); m \in M\}.$$

In case (2).  $\tilde{h}_1(\ell) = \ell$  and  $\tilde{h}_2(\ell) = \ell + bn_2$ . For any divisor b'of b, the decomposition of  $\mathbb{R}n_2 + \ell$  into "intervals" of length b' as in picture below gives rise to  $\tilde{\Delta}$  satisfying our requirements. Consider the  $\mathbb{P}_1$ -bundle W over the elliptic curve  $\mathbb{C}^*/Q_0(m_1, m_1)^{\mathbb{Z}}$  obtained by dividing  $\mathbb{C}^* \times \mathbb{P}_1$  out by the group generated by the automorphism  $(t_1, t_2) \mapsto$  $(Q_0(m_1, m_1)t_1, Q_0(m_1, m_2)t_2)$ . Then by Theorem 4.2 (iii), we see easily that  $\pi^{-1}(0)$  is a cycle of b/b' copies of W obtained by identifying the 0-section of one W with the  $\infty$ -section of the next. If Y is required to be non-singular, take b' = 1 and get the Voronoi type degeneration of Namikawa and Nakamura.



In case (3),  $\tilde{h}_1(\ell) = \ell + an_1$  and  $\tilde{h}_2(\ell) = \ell + bn_2$ . Again for divisors a'and b' of a and b, take the decomposition of  $\mathbb{R}n_1 + \mathbb{R}n_2 + \ell$  into "rectangles" of size  $a' \times b'$  as in the picture below (or a suitable sub division of it, if Y is required to be non-singular). Without any subdivision,  $\pi^{-1}(0)$ consists of (a/a')(b/b') copies of  $\mathbb{P}_1 \times \mathbb{P}_1$  glued along  $0 \times \mathbb{P}_1$ ,  $\infty \times \mathbb{P}_1$ ,  $\mathbb{P}_1 \times 0$ ,  $\mathbb{P}_1 \times \infty$ 's like a "toroidal net", again by Theorem 4.2 (iii). If a' = b' = 1, we again get the Voronoi type degeneration



In case (4),  $\tilde{h}_1(\ell) = \ell + (a+c)n_1 - cn_2$  and  $\tilde{h}_2(\ell) = \ell - cn_1 + (b+c)n_2$ . There are many different decompositions of  $\mathbb{R}n_1 + \mathbb{R}n_2 + \ell$  which give rise to allowable  $\tilde{\Delta}$ 's. The "Namikawa decompositions" in Oda-Seshadri

[49], among which is the Voronoi type decomposition, are examples.

For instance, let a = b = c = 1, and consider the two decompositions below.



It is the Voronoi type decomposition and  $\pi^{-1}(0)$  consists of two copies of  $\mathbb{P}_2$  glued along the three coordinates axes, by Theorem 4.2 (iii) and (7.4).



 $\tilde{\Delta} \cap (\mathbb{R}n_1 + \mathbb{R}n_2 + \ell)$  infinity of  $M_c(\tilde{N}, \tilde{\Delta})$   $\pi^{-1}(0)$ 

In this case,  $\pi^{-1}(0)$  is obtained by gluing together, as in the picture above, two copies of  $\mathbb{P}_2$  and one *W* obtained by blowing  $\mathbb{P}_2$  up along the three coordinates vertices, by Theorem 4.2 (iii) and Proposition 6.7. Note that *Y* is non-singular in this case and each of the six rational curves on *W* has the self-intersection number -1. This is Deligne's example described in Mumford [38].

# 12 Compact complex surfaces of class VII

Kodaira [30] classified non-singular compact complex surfaces into 136 seven classes. Among then, the last class *VII* has been the least understood until recently.

**Definition.** (Kodaira [30, II, Thm 26]) A non-singular compact complex surface *X* is said to be of class *VII* (resp. of class *VII*<sub>0</sub>) if the first Betti number  $b_1(X) = 1$  (resp.  $b_1(X) = 1$  and *X* is minimal, i.e. without exceptional curves of the first kind).

As usual, let

$$b_i(X) = \dim_{\mathbb{C}} H^i(X, \mathbb{C})$$
$$h^{p,q}(X) = \dim_{\mathbb{C}} H^q(\Omega_X^p)$$

and let  $c_1(x)$  and  $c_2(X)$  be the Chern classes of *X*. Moreover, let  $b^+$  and  $b^-$  be the number of positive and negative eigenvalues of the cup products on  $H^2(X, \mathbb{R})$ .

Then Kodaira [30, I, Thm 3] showed that a class *VII* surface *X* has the following numerical characters:

$$h^{0,1} = 1, h^{1,0} = h^{2,0} = 0$$
  
 $b_1 = 1, b^+ = 0$   
 $-c_1^2 = c_2 = b_2 = b^-$ 

**Definition.** An, *r*-dimensional compact complex manifolds *X* is called a *Hopf manifold* if its universal covering manifold  $\tilde{X}$  is isomorphic to  $\mathbb{C}^r - \{0\}$ . If, moreover,  $\pi_1(X) \cong \mathbb{Z}$ , then *X* is called a *primary* Hopf manifold. (See e.g. [1] for a generalization, the Calabi-Eckmann manifold.)

Kodaira [30, III, Thm 41] gave a topological characterization of 2dimensional Hopf manifolds, i.e. Hopf surfaces :  $b_2 = 0$  and  $\pi_1(X)$  contains an infinite cyclic subgroup of finite index.

Again according to Kodaira [30, II, Thm 30], a primary Hopf surface *X* is of the following form :

$$X = (\mathbb{C}^2 - \{0\})/\gamma^{\mathbb{Z}},$$

where  $\gamma^{\mathbb{Z}}$  is the group of automorphisms generated by  $\gamma$  of the form

$$\gamma(z, z') = (\lambda z + \mu(z')^b, \lambda' z')$$

with a positive integer *b* and  $\lambda$ ,  $\lambda'$ ,  $\mu \in \mathbb{C}$  satisfying

$$0 < |\lambda| \le |\lambda'| < 1$$
$$(\lambda - (\lambda')^b)\mu = 0.$$

We have the following characterizations of some of the class  $VII_0$  surfaces:

**Theorem.** (Kodaira [K3, II, §. 9 & §. 10]) *X* is a class  $VII_0$  surface with  $b_2 = 0$  and containing at least one curve if and only if *X* is either

- a Hopf surface, or
- a certain elliptic surface over  $\mathbb{P}_1$  with at most non-reduced nonsingular fibers, which is obtained from the product of  $\mathbb{P}_1$  and an elliptic curve by a finite succession of "logarithmic transformations".
- **138** Theorem (Inoue [22]) X is a class VII<sub>0</sub> surface with  $b_2 = 0$  containing no curve, and with a line bundle L such that  $H^0(\Omega^1_X \otimes L) \neq 0$  if and only if X is isomorphic to one of the surfaces

$$S_M, S^+_{N,p,q,r}$$
 and  $S^-_{p,q,r}$ 

constructed by Inoue.

All these class  $VII_0$  surface satisfy  $b_2 = 0$ . Recently, Inoue [23], [24] and Kato [29] constructed series of example with  $b_2 \neq 0$ . As we see in §. 14 and §. 15, these can most easily be described in terms of torus embeddings.

In this connection, the following result of Kato [29] is of utmost importance:

**Definition.** A *global spherical shell* in an *r*-dimensional compact complex manifold *X* is an open submanifold isomorphic to

 $\{z = (z_1, \dots, z_r) \varepsilon \mathbb{C}^r; 1 - \varepsilon < |z| < 1 + \varepsilon\}$ 

with  $0 < \varepsilon < 1$  and  $|z|^2 = |z_1|^2 + \cdots + |z_r|^2$ , such that the complement in *X* is *connected*.

An elliptic curve, for instance, contains global spherical shells.



**Theorem.** (Kato [29]) Let  $r \ge 2$ . If an r-dimensional compact complex 139 manifold X contains a global spherical shell, then X is a deformation of (hence is diffeomorphic to) the blowing up of a primary Hopf manifold along a finite number of points. In particular, X is non-Kähler and  $\pi_1(X) = \mathbb{Z}$ .

As we see in §. 14 and §. 15, Kato could also show that all the examples of Inoue with  $b_2 \neq 0$  dealt with in §. 14 and §. 15 contain global spherical shells, construct a versal family of deformations for the Inoue surfaces in §. 14 (cf. Theorem 14.2), and construct may new class *VII*<sub>0</sub> surfaces with  $b_2 \neq 0$  which

contain global spherical shells (cf. Remark after Thm. 14.1).

# 13 Hopf surfaces and their degeneration

In this section, we deal with those Hopf surfaces which can be described in terms of torus embeddings. Although we restrict ourselves to the complex case, the non-archimedean analogue might be interesting to formulate. (cf Gerritzen-Grauert [15]).

Let us first look at the primary Hopf surface

$$X \doteq (\mathbb{C}^2 - \{0\})/\gamma^{\mathbb{Z}}$$

where  $\gamma(z, z') = (\lambda z, \lambda' z')$  for  $(z, z') \in \mathbb{C}^2 - \{0\}$  and  $\lambda, \lambda' \varepsilon \mathbb{C}$  with  $0 < |\lambda| < 1, 0 < |\lambda'| < 1$ .

Since  $\gamma$  is defined in terms of monomials, *X* can be described by means of torus embeddings as follows: Let  $N \cong \mathbb{Z}^2$  with a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -basis  $\{n, n'\}$ , and consider the r.p.p.decomposition

$$\Delta = \{\mathbb{R}_o n, \mathbb{R}_o n', \{0\}\}.$$

Then obviously  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta) \cong \mathbb{C}^2 - \{0\}$ , which is simply connected for instance by Proposition 10.2.  $\gamma$  is the translation action by  $(\lambda, \lambda') = \lambda^{\langle ?,n \rangle} \lambda'^{\langle ?,n' \rangle} \in T_N$ . Thus it induces the translation action  $\overline{\gamma}$  by  $(-\log |\lambda|)$  $n + (-\log |\lambda'|)n' \in N_R$  on the manifold with corners  $Mc(N, \Delta)$ . As in the picture below, the action of  $\overline{\gamma}^{\mathbb{Z}}$  on  $Mc(N, \Delta)$  is properly discontinuous and fixed point free, and has a compact fundamental domain. Thus the action of  $\gamma^{\mathbb{Z}}$  on  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta)$  has the same properties, and we conclude that

$$X = T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle) / \gamma^{\mathbb{Z}}$$

is a non-singular compact complex surface with  $\pi_1(X) = \mathbb{Z}$ . Moreover, *X* contains mutually disjoint elliptic curves

$$E = \operatorname{orb}(\mathbb{R}_o n') / \gamma^{\mathbb{Z}} \cong \mathbb{C}^* / \lambda^{\mathbb{Z}}$$
$$E' = \operatorname{orb}(\mathbb{R}_o n') / \gamma^{\mathbb{Z}} \cong \mathbb{C}^* / {\lambda'}^{\mathbb{Z}}.$$

By Proposition 6.6, the canonical bundle of X is obviously

$$\omega_X = 0_X (-E - E').$$

Since  $E \cdot E' = 0$  and, furthermore,  $E^2 = E'^2 = 0$ , as we see below, we have  $b_2 = -c_1^2 = 0$ . Indeed, the vertical projection  $N \to \mathbb{Z}n$  induces

$$\operatorname{orb}(\mathbb{R}_{o}n') \subset T_{N} \operatorname{emb}(\Delta) - \operatorname{orb}(\mathbb{R}_{o}n) \longrightarrow \mathbb{C}^{*}$$

$$\overset{\parallel^{i}}{\mathbb{C}^{*} \times \mathbb{C}}$$

141 on which  $\gamma$  acts by  $\gamma(z, z') = (\lambda z, \lambda' z')$ . Dividing these out by  $\lambda^{\mathbb{Z}}$ , we get

$$E \subset X - E \longrightarrow \mathbb{C}^* / \lambda^{\mathbb{Z}}.$$

X - E' is obviously the total space V(L) of a line bundle *L* of degree 0 on the elliptic curve  $\mathbb{C}^*/\lambda^{\mathbb{Z}}$  and *E* is its 0-section. Thus

$$E^2 = -\deg L = 0.$$

*X* is thus a rather curious compactification of V(L).

*X* has a global spherical shell indicated in the picture.



For a positive integer a, let  $\overline{F}_a$  be the non-projective algebraic surface with an ordinary double curve obtained by identifying the 0-section and the  $\infty$ -section of the rational ruled surface

$$F_a = \mathbb{P}(0_{\mathbb{P}_1} \otimes 0_{\mathbb{P}_1}(a))$$

by means of the map  $(z, 0) \mapsto (\phi(z), \infty)$  for  $\phi \in Aut (\mathbb{P}_1)$ . Assuming that the coefficients of  $\phi$  as a linear fractional transformation are small, Kodaira [30, III, Thm 45] showed:

Theorem. There exists a complex analytic family over the unit disk

$$\pi(a): Y(a) \longrightarrow U = \{\lambda \in \mathbb{C}; |\lambda| < 1\}$$

such that

 $\pi(a)^{-1}(0) = \bar{F}_a$ 

and  $\pi(a)_{(\lambda)}^{-1}$  is a Hopf surface for  $\lambda \neq 0$ .

Using torus embeddings, we prove this theorem in the special case where  $\phi$  is the identity. The proof can be modified so that it works for  $\phi(z) = cz^{\pm}, c \in \mathbb{C}^*$ .

For this purpose, let us first consider the following Hopf surface: As before, let  $N \cong \mathbb{Z}^2$  with a basis  $\{n, n'\}$ . For a positive integer a, let

$$\Delta(a) = \{\mathbb{R}_o n, \mathbb{R}_o(-n + an'), \{0\}\}.$$

Then by Proposition 10.2, we see that

$$\pi_1(T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle(a)) \cong \mathbb{Z}/a\mathbb{Z}.$$

143 In fact the universal covering space is  $T_{N'} \operatorname{emb}(\Delta(a)) \cong \mathbb{C}^2 - \{0\}$ , where  $N' \subset N$  is the subgroup generated by n and -n + an'. By (7.6'), we also see that  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta(a))$  is the complement of the 0-section and the  $\infty$ -section of  $F_a$ .

For  $\lambda$  in the punctured unit disk  $U^*$ , consider the translation action  $\gamma_{\lambda}$  on  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta(a))$  of

$$\mathcal{X}^{,n'} \in T_N.$$

Then the induced action  $\bar{\gamma}_{\lambda}$  on  $Mc(N, \triangle(a))$  is the translation by  $(-\log |\lambda|)n'$ , hence is properly discontinuous, fixed point free with a compact fundamental domain.

Thus we see that

$$X_{\lambda}(a) = T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta(a)) / \gamma_{\lambda}^{\mathbb{Z}}$$

is a Hopf surface with

$$\pi_1(X_\lambda(a)) \cong \mathbb{Z} \ x \ \mathbb{Z}/a\mathbb{Z}.$$



We then consider  $\tilde{N} = N \oplus \mathbb{Z}\ell$  and its automorphism  $\tilde{\gamma}$  defined by

$$\tilde{h}(n) = n, \quad \tilde{h}(n') = n', \quad \tilde{h}(\ell) = \ell + n'.$$

Let  $(\tilde{N}, \tilde{\Delta}(a))$  be the r.p.p.decomposition consisting of the faces of 144  $\sigma_{\nu}, \sigma'_{\nu}$  with  $\nu$  running through  $\mathbb{Z}$ , where

$$\sigma_{\nu} = \mathbb{R}_o n + \mathbb{R}_o(\ell + \nu n') + \mathbb{R}_o(\ell + (\nu - 1)n')$$
  
$$\sigma_{\nu}' = \mathbb{R}_o(-n + an') + \mathbb{R}_o(\ell + \nu n') + \mathbb{R}_o(\ell + (\nu - 1)n').$$

Thus  $\tilde{\Delta}(a) \cap N_{\mathbb{R}} = \Delta(a)$  and  $\tilde{\Delta}(a)$  induces on the affine subspace  $N_{\mathbb{R}} + \ell$ the polyhedral decomposition  $\tilde{\Delta}(a) \cap (N_{\mathbb{R}} + \ell)$  as in the picture below.  $\tilde{h}$  preserves  $\tilde{\Delta}(a)$  and gives rise to an automorphism  $\bar{\gamma}$  of non-singular  $T_{\tilde{N}} \operatorname{emb}(\tilde{\Delta}(a))$ .

Note that the boundary at infinity of  $Mc(\tilde{N}, \tilde{\Delta}(a))$  consists of two "walls" orb $(\mathbb{R}_o n)/CT_{\tilde{N}}$  and orb $(\mathbb{R}_o(-n + an'))/CT_{\tilde{N}}$  as well as the "roof" as in the picture.

The horizontal projection induces

$$\tilde{\pi}(a): T_{\tilde{N}} \operatorname{emb}(\tilde{\Delta}(a)) \to T_{\mathbb{Z}\ell}(\{\mathbb{R}_o\ell, \{0\}\}) = \mathbb{C}.$$

Let *V* be the inverse image of the unit disk *U* by  $\tilde{\pi}(a)$ . Thus ord(*V*) is the upper half of  $Mc(\tilde{N}, \tilde{\Delta}(a))$ . The action of  $\tilde{\gamma}^{\mathbb{Z}}$  on *V* is properly discontinuous and fixed point free,  $\tilde{\gamma}$  coincides with  $\gamma_{\lambda}$  above on  $\tilde{\pi}(a)^{-1}(\lambda) = T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle(a))x\{\lambda\}$ . Hence

$$\pi(a): Y(a) = V/\tilde{\gamma}^{\mathbb{Z}} \to U$$

is the sough-for family with

$$\pi(a)^{-1}(0) = \overline{F}_a$$
 and  $\pi(a)^{-1}(\lambda) = X_{\lambda}(a)$  for  $\lambda \neq 0$ 

by Theorem 4.2 (iii) and (7.6').





145

# 14 Inoue's examples of class $VII_0$ surfaces with $b_2 = 1$

Torus embeddings are very convenient to describe Inoue's examples of class  $VII_0$  surfaces with  $b_2 \neq 0$ . In this section we describe the first series of his examples in [23]. Besides, we will be able to describe their degeneration easily in terms of torus embeddings. We also sketch Kato's generalization of Inoue's construction which provides us with many new examples.

As before, let  $N \cong \mathbb{Z}^2$  with a basis  $\{n, n'\}$ . Consider the r.p.p. decomposition  $(N, \Delta)$ , where

$$\Delta = \{\mathbb{R}_o n' \text{ and the faces of } \sigma_v \text{ for } v \in \mathbb{Z}\}\$$
$$\sigma_v = \mathbb{R}_o(n + vn') + \mathbb{R}_o(n + (v - 1)n').$$

By Proposition 10.2,  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle)$  is simply connected. Let *h* be the auto-

morphism of N defined by

$$h(n) = n + n', \quad h(n') = n'.$$

*h* obviously preserves  $\triangle$  and gives rise to the automorphism  $h_*$  of  $T_N$  emb( $\triangle$ ).

For  $\lambda \in U^* = \{\lambda \in \mathbb{C}; 0 < |\lambda| < 1\}$ , consider the automorphism

 $\gamma_{\lambda}$  = (the translation by  $\lambda^{(?,n)}$ )  $\circ h_*$ 

of  $T_n \operatorname{emb}(\triangle)$ . For  $(z, z') \in T_N$ , we see that

$$\gamma_{\lambda}(z, z') = (\lambda z, zz'),$$

hence

$$\gamma^{\nu}_{\lambda}(z,z') = (\lambda^{\nu}z,\lambda^{\nu(\nu-1)/2}z^{\nu}z') \text{ for } \nu \in \mathbb{Z}.$$

 $\gamma_{\lambda}$  induces an automorphism  $\bar{\gamma}_{\lambda}$  of  $Mc(N, \triangle)$ 

 $\bar{\gamma}_{\lambda} = (\text{the translation by } (-\log |\lambda|)n) \circ Mc(h).$ 

As we see easily in the picture, the action of  $\bar{\gamma}_{\lambda}^{\mathbb{Z}}$ , hence that of  $\gamma_{\lambda}^{\mathbb{Z}}$ , is properly discontinuous, fixed point free and with a compact fundamental domain. Thus

$$X_{\lambda} = T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta) / \gamma_{\lambda}^{\mathbb{Z}}$$

147 is a non-singular compact complex surface with  $\pi_1(X_{\lambda}) = \mathbb{Z}$ , in particular  $b_1 = 1$ .



**Theorem 14.1** (Inoue [23]). For  $\lambda \in U^*$ , the surface  $X_{\lambda}$  is of class  $VII_0$  with  $b_2 = 1 \cdot X_{\lambda}$  has exactly two irreducible curves, an elliptic curve E and a rational curve C with a node, such that

 $E^2 = -1$ ,  $C^2 = 0$ ,  $E \cdot C = 0$  and C homologous to zero  $H^2(X_\lambda, \mathbb{Q})$  is 1-dimensional and is generated by E.

*Proof.* orb( $\mathbb{R}_o n'$ ) =  $\mathbb{C}^*$  is certainly  $\gamma_{\lambda}^{\mathbb{Z}}$ -invariant and  $E = \operatorname{orb}(\mathbb{R}_o n')/\gamma_{\lambda}^{\mathbb{Z}} \cong \mathbb{C}^*/\lambda^{\mathbb{Z}}$  is an elliptic curve. On the other hand, the closure of  $\operatorname{orb}(\mathbb{R}_o(n + \nu n'))$  is  $\mathbb{P}_1$  for  $\nu \in \mathbb{Z}$ , and their union  $C^*$  is  $\gamma_{\lambda}^{\mathbb{Z}}$ -invariant.  $C = C^*/\gamma_{\lambda}^{\mathbb{Z}}$  is a rational curve obtained from  $\mathbb{P}_1$  by identifying 0 and  $\infty$ . Since  $\mathbb{C}^*$  is the fiber of the equivariant morphism

$$T_N \operatorname{emb}(\triangle) \longrightarrow T_{\mathbb{Z}n} \operatorname{emb}(\{\mathbb{R}_o n, \{0\}\})$$

induced by the vertical projection, we see that  $C^2 = 0$ . Certainly, *C* and *E* are disjoint, hence  $C \cdot E = 0$ . Let us now look at

on which  $\gamma_{\lambda}^{\mathbb{Z}}$  acts via  $\gamma_{\lambda}^{\nu}(z, z') = (\lambda^{\nu} z, \lambda^{\nu(\nu-1)/2} z^{\nu} z')$ . Dividing these out, we have

$$E \subset X_{\lambda} - C \longrightarrow \mathbb{C}^* / \lambda^{\mathbb{Z}},$$

which makes  $X_{\lambda} - C$  the total space V(L) of a line bundle *L* of degree 1 over  $\mathbb{C}^*/\lambda^{\mathbb{Z}}$  and *E* its 0-section. Hence  $E^2 = -\deg L = -1$ . By Proposition 6.6, we see that the canonical bundle is

$$\omega_{X_{\lambda}} = 0_{X_{\lambda}}(-E - C),$$

hence  $b_2 = -c_1^2 = -(-E - C)^2 = 1$ . Thus  $H^2(X_{\lambda}, \mathbb{Q})$  is necessarily spanned by *E* and *C* is homologous to zero.

Suppose there were an irreducible curve  $D \neq E, C$ . Since  $C \cdot D = 0$ , D would be contained in  $X_{\lambda} - C = V(L)$ . Thus  $E \cdot D$ , which is non-negative by assumption, would be the degree of the pullback of  $L^{-1}$  by  $D \rightarrow V(L) \rightarrow \mathbb{C}^*/\lambda^{\mathbb{Z}}$ , a contradiction.  $X_{\lambda}$  is minimal, since it thus has no exceptional curve of the first kind.

**Remark**. Kato [29] looks at  $X_{\lambda}$  this way: it is obtained, from ord<sup>-1</sup> of the shaded area in  $Mc(N, \Delta)$ , by identifying via  $\gamma_{\lambda}$  the two spherical **149** shells which is ord<sup>-1</sup> of the two thick arcs in the picture.



In this way, we need to consider not  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta)$  but the simpler torus embedding

$$Z = T_N \operatorname{emb}(\{\mathbb{R}_\circ n, \mathbb{R}_\circ (n+n'), \mathbb{R}_\circ n', \{0\}\})$$

obt ained by blowing up  $\mathbb{C}^2$  along 0. Hence  $Z = V_1 \cup V_2$  with  $V_1 = \mathbb{C}^2$ and  $V_2 = \mathbb{C}^2$  with coordinates  $(z, \zeta)$  and  $(z', \zeta')$ , respectively, glued along  $(\mathbb{C}^*)^2$  via

$$z' = z\zeta$$
 and  $\zeta' = \zeta^{-1}$ .

Let  $\phi_{\lambda} : \mathbb{C}^2 \to V_1 \subset Z$  be defined by

$$\phi_{\lambda}(z,z')=(\lambda z,z'/\lambda).$$

Consider, for  $\varepsilon > 0$  small, the spherical shell

$$\sum = \{(z, z') \in \mathbb{C}^2; 1 - \varepsilon < (|z|^2 + |z'|^2)^{1/2} < 1 + \varepsilon\}$$

and its inverse image  $\Sigma'$  by the blowing up  $z \to \mathbb{C}^2$ . Let  $\Sigma''_{\lambda} = \phi_{\lambda}(\Sigma)$ . Then  $\Sigma'$  and  $\Sigma''_{\lambda}$  are spherical shells whose images under ord are the thick arcs in the picture. Thus  $\phi_{\lambda}$  induces an isomorphism  $\psi_{\lambda} : \Sigma' \xrightarrow{\sim} \Sigma'_{\lambda}$ .



Then  $X_{\lambda}$  is obtained from the inverse image in *Z* of the shaded area **150** between the thick arcs  $\operatorname{ord}(\Sigma')$  and  $\operatorname{ord}(\Sigma''_{\lambda})$  by identifying  $\Sigma'$  and  $\Sigma_{\lambda''}$  via  $\psi_{\lambda}$ . The common image of  $\Sigma'$  and  $\Sigma''_{\lambda}$  in  $X_{\lambda}$  is obviously a global spherical shell.

This process was generalized by Kato [29] to produce new class  $VII_0$  surfaces with global spherical shells. Instead of *Z*, he takes *Z'* obtained from  $\mathbb{C}^2$  by a finite succession of blowing ups each time along a point over the previous center.

Kato's formulation also enabled him to construct a versal family of deformations of Inoue's example  $X_{\lambda}$ . As before, let  $U^*$  be the punctured unit disk and let  $B \subset \mathbb{C}^2$  be a small open ball centered at 0 with the coordinate  $(\tau, \tau')$ .

Theorem 14.2 (Kato [29]). There exists a versal family of deformations

$$\mathscr{X} = \{X_{\lambda,\tau,\tau'}; (\lambda,\tau,\tau') \in U^* \times B\} \longrightarrow U^* \times B$$

and families of curves

$$\mathscr{C} = \{C_{\lambda,\tau,\tau'}\}$$
 and  $\mathscr{E} = \{E_{\lambda,\tau,\tau'}\}$ 

in  $\mathcal{X}$  such that

- (i)  $X_{\lambda,0,0} = X_{\lambda}$  is Inoue's example with  $C_{\lambda,0,0} = C$  and  $E_{\lambda,0,0} = E$  of Theorem 14.1.
- (ii) For  $\tau' \neq 0$ ,  $E_{\lambda,0,\tau'}$  is empty and  $X_{\lambda,0,\tau'}$  is a new class VII<sub>0</sub> surface with a unique irreducible curve  $C_{\lambda,0,\tau'}$  rational with a node of self-intersection number 0.

For different  $\tau' \neq 0$ 's,  $X_{\lambda,0,\tau'}$  are all isomorphic.

(iii) For  $\tau \neq 0$ ,  $X_{\lambda,\tau,\tau'}$  is blowing up of a primary Hopf surface along a point.

Here is a sketch of the construction: Let  $Z = V_1 \cup V_2$  and  $\sum'$  be as in the Remark above. Consider

$$\phi_{\lambda,\tau,\tau'}:\mathbb{C}^2\longrightarrow V_1\subset Z$$

defined by  $\phi_{\lambda,\tau,\tau'}(z,z') = (\lambda(z_{\tau}), (z\zeta + \tau')/\lambda)$ . It again induces an isomorphism

$$\psi_{\lambda,\tau,\tau'}: \sum' \xrightarrow{\sim} \sum''_{\lambda,\tau,\tau'} = \phi_{\lambda,\tau,\tau'}(\sum').$$

Then take ord<sup>-1</sup> of the shaded area in the picture of  $Z/CT_N$ . Let  $X_{\lambda,\tau,\tau'}$  be the manifold obtained from it by identifying  $\Sigma'$  and  $\sum_{\lambda,\tau,\tau'}$  via  $\psi_{\lambda,\tau,\tau'}$ . We then let  $\mathscr{C}$  and  $\mathscr{E}$  be the images in  $\mathscr{X}$  of

$$\{(z',\zeta',\lambda,\tau,\tau')\in V_2\times U^*\times B: z'\zeta'+\lambda'+\lambda\tau/(\lambda-1)=0\}$$

and

$$\{(z,\zeta',\lambda,\tau,\tau')\in V_1\times U^*\times B; \zeta=\tau'=0\},\$$

respectively.



152

We now look at the degeneration of Inoue's surface  $X_{\lambda}$  as  $\lambda$  tends to 0.

Theorem 14.3. There exists a proper flat family

$$\Pi: \lambda \longrightarrow U = \{\lambda \in \mathbb{C}; |\lambda| < 1\}$$

with Y non-singular such that for  $\lambda \neq 0$   $\Pi^{-1}(\lambda)$  is Inoue's surface  $X_{\lambda}$ , and that  $\Pi^{-1}(0)$  is a non-normal surface obtained by identifying two  $\mathbb{P}'_1$ s on the 2-dimensional complete non-singular torus embedding W as in the picture.



*Proof.* Let  $\widetilde{N} = N \otimes \mathbb{Z}\ell$  and consider the automorphism  $\widetilde{h}$  of  $\widetilde{N}$  defined by

$$\widetilde{h}(n) = n + n', \quad \widetilde{h}(n'), \quad \widetilde{h}(\ell) = \ell + n.$$

153 Let  $(\widetilde{N}, \widetilde{\Delta})$  be the r.p.p.decomposition, where  $\widetilde{\Delta}$  consists of the faces of

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathbb{R}_{o}\widetilde{h}^{\nu}(\ell) + \mathbb{R}_{o}\widetilde{h}^{\nu+1}(\ell) + \mathbb{R}_{o}\widetilde{h}^{\nu-1}(n) \\ &\mathbb{R}_{o}\widetilde{h}^{\nu+1}(\ell) + \mathbb{R}_{o}\widetilde{h}^{\nu-1}(n) + \mathbb{R}_{o}\widetilde{h}^{\nu}(n) \\ &\mathbb{R}_{o}\widetilde{h}^{\nu}(\ell) + \mathbb{R}_{o}\widetilde{h}^{\nu+1}(\ell) + \mathbb{R}_{o}n' \end{aligned}$$

with  $\nu$  running through  $\mathbb{Z}$ . Then  $\widetilde{\Delta} \cap N_{\mathbb{R}}$  coincides with  $\Delta$  of Theorem 14.1, and  $\widetilde{\Delta}$  inducers the polyhedral decomposition  $\widetilde{\Delta} \cap (N_{\mathbb{R}} + \ell)$  as in the picture below. Note that

$$h^{\nu}(\ell) = \ell + \nu n + (\nu(\nu - 1)/2)n'.$$

Obviously,  $\tilde{h}$  preserves  $\tilde{\Delta}$  and gives rise to an automorphism  $\tilde{\gamma}$  of  $T_{\tilde{N}}$ emb( $\tilde{\Delta}$ ). The horizontal projection induces  $\tilde{\Pi} : T_{\tilde{N}} \operatorname{emb}(\tilde{\Delta}) \longrightarrow T_{\mathbb{Z}\ell}$ emb({ $\mathbb{R}_o\ell$ , {0}}) =  $\mathbb{C}$ . Again let V be the inverse image of the unit disk U under  $\tilde{\pi}$ . Thus ord (V) is the "upper half" of  $Mc(\tilde{N}, \tilde{\Delta})$ . The action of  $\tilde{\gamma}^{\mathbb{Z}}$  on V is properly discontinuous and fixed point free. Again by Theorem 4.2 (iii) and Proposition 6.7, we see that

$$\pi: Y = V/\widetilde{\gamma}^{\mathbb{Z}} \longrightarrow U$$

is the sought-for family



# 15 Hilbert modular surfaces and class $VII_0$ surfaces

Inoue [24] constructed another series of examples of class  $VII_0$  surfaces with  $b_2 \neq 0$ , using the minimal desingularization by Hirzebruch [19]

of neighborhoods of cusps of the Hilbert modular surfaces. Again torus embeddings are very convenient to describe them.

We first describe the relevant part of Hirzebruch's theory in terms of torus embeddings. (See also Cohn [6].) For the complete description of compactified Hilbert modular surfaces, we refer the reader to Mumford et al. [61, Chap. 1, §. 5]. See also Rapoport [54] for the case of totally real fields in general.

155

Let  $K = \mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{d})$  be a real quadratic field. Then we have two embeddings of *K* into  $\mathbb{R}$ 

$$K \ni \xi \mapsto \xi \in \mathbb{R}$$
 and  $K \ni \xi \mapsto \xi' \in \mathbb{R}$ 

so that we have a canonical isomorphism of R-algebras

$$\mathbb{R} \otimes_{\mathbb{O}} K \ni a \otimes \xi \mapsto (a\xi, a\xi') \in \mathbb{R}^2$$

with which we identify them from now on.

**Definition.** For a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -lattice *N* in *K*, let

 $U_N = \{ \text{positive units } u \text{ of } k \text{ such that } u_N = N \}$ 

 $U_N^+$  = {totally positive units *u* of *k* such that uN = N}.

Then it is known (see, for instance Hirzebruch [19]) that  $U_N$  and  $U_N^+$  are *infinite cyclic groups* with

$$[U_N : U_N^+] = 1 \text{ or } 2.$$

We have the canonical identification

$$N_{\mathbb{R}} = \mathbb{R} \otimes_{\mathbb{Q}} K = \mathbb{R}^2$$

with *N* lying irrationally in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  with respect to the coordinate system of  $\mathbb{R}^2$ . Consider the convex hull  $\sum'_N$  of

$$N \cap (\mathbb{R}_{>0})^2$$

and the infinite r.p.p.decomposition  $(N, \Delta'_N)$ , where  $\Delta'_N$  is the decomposition of the first quadrant  $(\mathbb{R}_{>0})^2$  into sectors by rays joining 0 and the points in  $N \cap \partial \sum'_N$ .

#### 15. Hilbert modular surfaces and class VII<sub>0</sub> surfaces

156

Thus  $Mc(N, \Delta'_N)$  is the union of  $N_{\mathbb{R}}$  and the infinite chain of intervals at infinity.

The action of  $U_N^+$  on N by multiplication certainly preserves  $\Delta'_N$ , hence we have an action of  $U_N^+$  on  $T_N \operatorname{emb}(\Delta'_N)$ . Let  $V'_N$  be  $\operatorname{ord}^{-1}$  of the union of the first quadrant  $(\mathbb{R}_{>0})^2$  and the boundary at infinity of  $Mc(N, \Delta'_N)$ . Then the action of  $U_N^+$  on  $\operatorname{ord}(V'_N)$ , hence that on  $V'_N$  itself, is properly discontinuous and fixed point free. Thus the quotient

$$W_N' = V_N'/U_N^+$$

(or, more generally, the quotient by a subgroup of  $U_N^+$  of finite index) is non-singular, and contains a finite cycle of  $\mathbb{P}'_1 s$ . Such  $W'_N$  appears as a neighborhood of the minimal resolution of a cusp of a Hilbert modular surface.



Inoue [24] obtains a new class  $VII_0$  surface by gluing two appropriate such  $W'_N$ 's together. In our formulation, this amounts to applying the process above to the first and the fourth quadrant simultaneously:

**Theorem 15.1** (Inoue). Let N be a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -lattice in a real quadratic field K. Let  $\sum'_N$  (resp.  $\sum''_N$ ) be the convex hull of  $N \cap (\mathbb{R}_{>0})^2$  (resp.  $N \cap (\mathbb{R}_{>0} \times \mathbb{R}_{<0})$ ). Consider the infinite r.p.p.decomposition  $(N, \Delta_N)$ , where  $\Delta_N$  is the decomposition of  $\mathbb{R}_{>0} \times \mathbb{R}$  into sectors by rays joining 0 and

$$(N \cap \partial \sum_{N}') \cup (N \cap \partial \sum_{N}'').$$

Let  $V_N$  be  $\operatorname{ord}^{-1}$  of the union of  $\mathbb{R}_{>0} \times \mathbb{R}$  and the boundary at infinity of  $Mc(N, \Delta_N)$ . Then the following hold:

- (i)  $X_N = V_N/U_N^+$  is a non-singular compact surface of class VII<sub>0</sub> with exactly  $b_2 \neq 0$  irreducible curves, which form two disjoint cycles of rational curves.
- (*ii*) If  $[U_N : U_N^+] = 2$ , then

$$\hat{X}_N = V_N / U_N$$

is also a non-singular compact complex surface of class VII<sub>0</sub> with exactly.  $b_2 \neq 0$  irreducible curves, which form a cycle of rational curves.

Here is a sketch of the proof:

From the picture below, the action of  $U_N^+$  (or  $U_N$  in case (*ii*)) on  $V_N$  is easily seen to be properly discontinuous, fixed point free and with a compact fundamental domain.

Note that in case (*ii*), the multiplication by an element of  $U_N$  not in  $U_N^+$  interchanges the first and the fourth quadrant, hence  $\Delta_N$  is in a sense "symmetric".

ord<sup>-1</sup> of the two infinite chains of the boundary gives rise to two disjoint cycles

$$C = C_0 + C_1 + \dots + C_{r-1}$$
  
 $C = D_0 + D_1 + \dots + D_{r-1}$ 

of rational curves in  $X_N$ . In case (*ii*), we have r = s and the images of *C* and *D* in  $\hat{X}_N$  coincide. We thus have a cycle of rational curves

$$\hat{C} = \hat{C}_0 + \hat{C}_1 + \cdots + \hat{C}_{r-1}$$

130



We refer reader to Inoue [24] for the proof of the facts:

$$H_1(X_N, \mathbb{Z}) \cong \mathbb{Z}$$
$$H_2(X_N, \mathbb{Z}) \cong \mathbb{Z}^{\oplus (r+s)}$$

 $C_0, \ldots, C_{r-1}$  and  $D_0, \ldots, D_{s-1}$  are the only irreducible curves in  $X_N$ . In particular,  $X_N$  and  $\hat{X}_N$  are minimal. Note that from the picture, we easily see that ord<sup>-1</sup> of the positive half of the abscissa in  $Mc(N, \Delta_N)$  gives rise to a  $CT_N$ -bundle over  $S^1$  in  $X_N$ , and that  $X_N - C - D$  is homeomorphic to the product of  $\mathbb{R}$  and the bundle.

**Remark.** As Kato [29] has shown,  $X_N$  contains a global spherical shell, hence is deformation of the blowing up of a primary Hopf surface along a finite number of points. Indeed, ord<sup>-1</sup> of a tubular neighborhood of the boundary of our fundamental domain in the picture gives rise to one

To study  $W'_N$ ,  $X_N$  and  $\hat{X}_N$  in more detail, the "modified" continued fraction expansion is very convenient as in Hirzebruch [19] and Inoue[24].

**Definition.** Let  $\xi$  be a real number. Then the modified continued fraction expansion

$$\xi = [[e_0, e_1, \ldots]]$$

is defined as follows: For non-negative integers v determine  $\xi_v$  and  $e_v$  inductively by

$$\xi_0 = \xi$$
  
 $e_v$  is the integer with  $e_v - 1 < \xi_v \le e_v$   
 $\xi_v = e_v - 1/\xi_{v+1}$ .

160

We call  $\xi'_{\nu}s$  the *intermediate terms* of the expansion of  $\xi$ .

Then  $e_v \ge 2$  for v > 0 with no infinite consecutive equality  $e_v = 2$  allowed when the expansion is infinite. As in the theory of usual continued fractions, we can show that  $\xi$  is a *irrational quadratic number* if and only if its expansion is eventually periodic, i.e. periodic from certain v on. (cf. Perron [51]).

As before, we identify an element  $\omega \in K$  with its canonical image  $(\omega, \omega')$  via  $K \hookrightarrow N_{\mathbb{R}} = \mathbb{R}^2$ . Then the continued fraction expansion of  $\omega$  and the convex geometry in  $\mathbb{R}^2$  have a very close relationship. To be able to describe degenerations of Inoue's surfaces  $X_N$ , we need the following slight amplification of the results pointed out by Hirzebruch [19] and Cohn [6].

**Proposition 15.2.** (1) Up to the multiplication of a totally positive element of K, a  $\mathbb{Z}$ -lattice N is of the form

 $N = \mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega$ 

with  $\omega > 1 > \omega' > 0$ , i.e.  $\omega$  reduced.

**161** (2)  $\omega \in K$  is reduced if and only if it has a purely periodic continued *fraction expansion* 

$$\omega = [[\overline{a_0, a_1, \dots, a_{r-1}}]]$$

(with the smallest period r).

(3) For reduced  $\omega$ , let  $\omega_v$  be the intermediate terms of the expansion of  $\omega$  with the smallest period r. Then

$$u = 1/(\omega_1 \omega_2 \cdots \omega_r)$$
is a generator of  $U^+_{\mathbb{Z}+\mathbb{Z}\omega}$ , and  $\{n_v\}_{\{v\in\mathbb{Z}\}}$  are the consecutive elements of

$$(\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega) \cap \partial \Sigma'_{\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega},$$

where

$$n_{qr+j} = (\omega_{j+1} \cdots \omega_r) u^{q+1}$$
 for  $q \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $0 \le j < r$ 

and

$$n_{\nu-1} + n_{\nu+1} = a_{\nu}n_{\nu}.$$

(4) For  $\omega$  reduced,  $1/\omega$  has the expansion of the form

$$1/\omega = [[1, e, \overline{a_0^*, \dots, a_{s-1}^*}]],$$

where s is the smallest period and  $e - 1 < \omega/(\omega - 1) < e$ . Let

$$\omega^* = [[\overline{a_0^*, \dots, a_{s-1}^*}]], i.e.\omega/(\omega - 1) < e - 1/\omega^*$$

and let  $\omega_v^*$  be the intermediate terms of the expansion of  $\omega^*$ .

Then  $u = 1/(\omega_1 \omega_2 \cdots \omega_r) = 1/(\omega_1^* \omega_2^* \cdots \omega_s^*)$ , and  $\{n_{\nu}^*\}_{\nu \in \mathbb{Z}}$  are the consecutive elements of  $(\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega) \cap \partial \sum_{\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega}^{\prime\prime}$ , where

$$n_{qs+j}^* = u^q(\omega - 1)/(\omega_0^* \dots \omega_j^*)$$
 for  $q \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $0 \le j < s$ 

and

$$n_{\nu-1}^* + n_{\nu+1}^* = a_{\nu}^* n_{\nu}.$$

**Corollary 15.3.** For  $N = \mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega$  with  $\omega$  reduced, the decomposition  $\Delta_N$  **162** of  $\mathbb{R}_{>0} \times \mathbb{R}$  consists of the faces of

$$\sigma_{\nu} = \mathbb{R}_{o}n_{\nu} + \mathbb{R}_{o}n_{\nu+1}$$
$$\sigma_{\nu}^{*} = \mathbb{R}_{o}n_{\nu}^{*} + \mathbb{R}_{o}n_{\nu+1}^{*}$$

for  $v \in \mathbb{Z}$ , with  $n_v$  and  $n_v^*$  as in Proposition 15.2.

Combined with Proposition 6.7, this implies the following:

**Proposition 15.4.** Let  $N = \mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega$  with  $\omega$  reduced and let  $\omega^*$  be as in *Proposition 15.2 (4) with* 

$$\omega = [[\overline{a_0, \dots, a_{r-1}}]]$$
$$\omega^* = [[\overline{a_0^*, \dots, a_{s-1}^*}]]$$

in the smallest periods r and s. Then Inoue's surface  $X_N$  has two cycles of rational curves

$$C = C_0 + C_1 + \dots + C_{r-1}$$
  
 $C = D_0 + D_1 + \dots + D_{s-1}$ 

and  $\hat{X}_N$  a cycle of rational curves

$$\hat{C} = \hat{C}_0 + \hat{C}_1 + \dots + \hat{C}_{r-1}$$

with the following properties:

(*i*) If r = 1 or s = 1, then C,  $\hat{C}$  or D is an irreducible rational curve with one node with

$$C^2 = -a_0 + 2$$
,  $\hat{C}^2 = -a_0, +2$ ,  $D^2 = -a_0^* + 2$ .

(*ii*) If  $r \ge 2$  or  $s \ge 2$ , then  $C_i$ ,  $\hat{C}_i$  or  $D_i$  are non-singular rational curves with

$$C_i^2 = -a_i, \hat{C}_i^2 = -a_i$$
  
 $D_i^2 = -a_i^*$   
 $i = 0, \dots, r-1$   
 $i = 0, \dots, s-1$ .

163
-----

To illustrate the relationship between the continued fraction expansion of  $\omega$  and the r.p.p.decomposition  $(N, \Delta_N)$  with  $N = \mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega$ , we now sketch the proof of Proposition 15.2 except fo the eventual periodicity of the expansion and the fact that

$$u = 1/(\omega_1 \cdots \omega_r) = 1/(\omega_1^* \cdots \omega_s^*)$$

generates  $U_N^+$ . Hopefully, it will explain the way we number the element of  $N \cap (\partial \Sigma'_N \cup \partial \Sigma''_N)$ .

The proof of the following inducted step is obvious.

134

**Lemma 15.5.** Let  $\xi \in K$  with  $\xi > \xi' > 0$ . For the integer e with  $e - 1 < \xi < e$ , let  $\xi = e - 1/\eta$ . Then  $\eta > 1$ ,  $\eta > \eta' > 0$  and  $1/\eta \in \mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\xi$ . If  $\xi > \xi' > 1$ , then  $\xi$  is in the interior of the convex hull of  $(\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\xi) \cap (\mathbb{R}_{>0})^2$ .

If  $\xi > 1 > \xi' > 0$ , i.e.  $\xi$  is reduced, then  $e \ge 2$  and  $\eta$  is also reduced. Moreover,  $\xi$ , 1 and  $1/\eta$  are consecutive elements in the intersection of  $\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\xi$  with the boundary of the convex hull  $\sum_{\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\xi} of (\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\xi) \cap (\mathbb{R}_{>0})^2$ .

By repeated application of Lemma 15.5 to the intermediate terms of the expansion of  $\omega$ , we get:

**Lemma 15.6.** Let  $\omega \in K$  with  $\omega > \omega' > 0$  with the expansion

$$\omega = [[a_0, a_1, \dots]]$$

and the intermediate term  $\omega_v$ . Let t be the smallest integer such that 164  $1 > \omega'_t$ . Then (i) the expansion is periodic from v = t on. Let r be the smallest period. Thus  $\omega_{v+r} = \omega_v$  and  $a_{v+1} = a_v$  for  $v \ge t$ . Let

$$\zeta_{-1} = 1$$
 and  $\zeta_v = 1/(\omega_0 \omega_1 \cdots \omega_v)$  for  $v \ge 0$ .

Then (ii)  $\{\zeta_{\nu}\}_{\nu \ge t-1}$  are consecutive elements of the intersection of  $\mathbb{Z}(1/\omega) + \mathbb{Z}$  with the boundary of the convex hull of  $(\mathbb{Z}(1/\omega) + \mathbb{Z}) \cap (\mathbb{R}_{>0})^2$ . Moreover,

$$\zeta_{\nu+1} + \zeta_{\nu-1} = a_{\nu}\zeta_{\nu} \text{ for } \nu \ge t.$$

(iii)  $1/(\omega_{t+1}\cdots\omega_{t+r})$  belongs to  $U^*_{\mathbb{Z}+\mathbb{Z}\omega}$ .

In particular, we get (1), (2) and a part of (3) of Proposition 15.2, since

$$\omega(\mathbb{Z}(1/\omega) + \mathbb{Z}) = \mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega.$$

Let us now prove (4). Let  $\xi = 1/\omega$  with the intermediate terms  $\xi_{\nu}$ and with the expansion  $\xi = [[e_0, e_1, \ldots]]$ . Since  $\omega$  is reduced, hence  $\xi' > 1 > \xi_0 > 0$  by assumption, we have  $e_0 = 1$  and  $1/\xi_1 \in \mathbb{R}_{>0} \times \mathbb{R}_{<0}$ . Since  $0 < e_1 - \xi_1 = 1/\xi_2 < 1$  and  $1/\xi'_2 = e_1 - \xi'_1 > e_1 \ge 2$ , we see that  $\xi_1 = \omega/(\omega - 1)$ ,  $\xi_2 = \omega^*$  and  $e_1 = e$  of (4). We now apply (3) to  $\omega^*$ , taking  $u = 1/(\omega_1^* \cdots \omega_s^*)$  for granted. Thus

$$(\omega_{i+1}^* \cdots \omega_s^*)/(w_1^* \cdots \omega_s^*)^{q+1} = \omega^* n_{qs+i}^*/(\omega - 1)$$

for  $q \in \mathbb{Z}$  and  $0 \le j < s$  are the consecutive elements of

$$(\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega^*) \cap \partial \Sigma'_{\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega^*}.$$

165 *On the other hand, we have* 

$$\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega = \omega(\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}(1/\omega)) = \omega(\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}(1/\xi_1))$$
$$= \omega(\mathbb{Z}(1/\xi_1) + \mathbb{Z}(1/\xi_1\xi_2)) = ((\omega - 1)/\omega^*)\{\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega^*\}$$

Since  $(\omega - 1) > 0 > (\omega' - 1)$ , we see that  $\{n_v^*\}_{v \in \mathbb{Z}}$  are the consecutive elements of

$$(\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega) \cap \partial \Sigma''_{\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega} = \left( (\omega - 1/\omega^*) \right) \{ (\mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega^*) \cap \partial \Sigma' \mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega^* \}.$$

We now describe degenerations of Inoue's surface  $X_N$ .

**Proposition 15.7** (Makio). For reduced  $\omega$  K, let  $N = \mathbb{Z} + \mathbb{Z}\omega$ . Then there exists a proper and flat family

 $\pi:Y\to\mathbb{C}$ 

with Y normal such that  $\pi^{-1}(\lambda) = X_N$  for all  $\lambda \neq 0$  and that  $\pi^{-1}(0)$  is a non-normal surface obtained by identifying two  $\mathbb{P}'_1$ s on the 2 - dimensional complete normal  $T_N$ -embedding Z as in the picture, where  $n_v$  and  $n_v^*$  are as in Prop. 15.2.



The r.p.p. decomposition for Z

**166 Remark.** Unlike Theorem 14.3, *Y* and *Z* may be singular in general. They are non-singular if r = 1. For each specific *N*, we can certainly replace *Y* by a blow up to obtained non-singular *Y* and  $\pi^{-1}(0)$  consisting of non-singular components crossing normally. As is obvious from the construction of *Y* below, there, many other choices for *Y*.

*Proof.* As before, let  $\tilde{N} = N \oplus \mathbb{Z}\ell$ . Left the action of  $U_N^*$  on N to  $\tilde{N}$  by letting it act as the identity for  $\ell$ . By Proposition 15.2, we have

$$n_0 = 1$$
,  $n_{-1} = \omega$ ,  $n_{-1}^* = \omega - 1$ .

This fact guarantees that  $(\tilde{N}, \tilde{\Delta})$  is a  $U_N^*$ -invariant r.p.p.decomposition, where  $\tilde{\Delta}$  consists of the faces of

$$\begin{aligned} &\mathbb{R}_{o}(n_{ir}+\ell) + \mathbb{R}_{o}n_{ir+\nu-1} + \mathbb{R}_{o}n_{ir+\nu} & i \in \mathbb{Z}, \quad 0 \le \nu < r \\ &\mathbb{R}_{o}(n_{ir}+\ell) + \mathbb{R}_{o}n_{is+\nu}^{*} + \mathbb{R}_{o}n_{is+\nu+1}^{*} & i \in \mathbb{Z}, \quad 0 \le \nu < s \\ &\mathbb{R}_{o}(n_{ir}+\ell) + \mathbb{R}_{o}(n_{(i+1)r}+\ell) + \mathbb{R}_{o}n_{(i+1)r-1} & i \in \mathbb{Z} \\ &\mathbb{R}_{o}(n_{ir}+\ell) + \mathbb{R}_{o}(n_{(i+1)r}+\ell) + \mathbb{R}_{o}n_{(i+1)s}^{*} & i \in \mathbb{Z}. \end{aligned}$$

Seen from above the north pole, the decomposition induced by  $\tilde{\Delta}$  on a sphere in  $\tilde{N}_{\mathbb{R}}$  centered at 0 looks like the picture below.

Let *B* be ord<sup>-1</sup> of the union in  $Mc(\tilde{N}, \tilde{\Delta})$  of  $(\mathbb{R}_{>0} \times \mathbb{R}) \times \mathbb{R}\ell$  and the boundary at infinity. Then *B* is  $U_N^+$ -invariant and the action is properly discontinuous without fixed point. By Theorem 4.2 (iii), we are done.



167

**Examples.** (1) If  $\omega = 2 + \sqrt{3} = [[\bar{4}]]$ , then  $\omega^* = 1 + \sqrt{3}/3 = [[\bar{2}, \bar{3}]]$ . Hence  $X_N$  is as in the picture. We have

$$n_1 = -\omega + 4, n_0 = 1, n_{-1} = \omega, n_{-2} = 4\omega - 1$$
  
$$n_2^* = 2\omega - 7, n_1^* = \omega - 3, n_0^* = \omega - 2, n_{-1}^* = \omega - 1, n_{-2}^* = 2\omega - 1.$$

Since r = 1, *Y* and *Z* of Prop. 15.7 are non-singular. Taking the  $U_N^+$  translates of  $\mathbb{R}_o(n_0+\ell) + \mathbb{R}_o n_0 + \mathbb{R}_o n_1$  and  $\mathbb{R}_o(n_0+\ell) + \mathbb{R}_o(n_1+\ell) + \mathbb{R}_o n_1$  instead of  $\mathbb{R}_o(n_0+\ell) + \mathbb{R}_o(n_1+\ell) + \mathbb{R}_o n_0$  and  $\mathbb{R}_o(n_0+\ell) + \mathbb{R}_o n_{-1} + \mathbb{R}_o n_0$ , we get a different degeneration *Z*'



138

(2) Let  $\omega = (3 + \sqrt{5})/2 = [[\bar{3}]] = \omega^*$ . Then  $U_N$  is generated by 168  $(-1 + \sqrt{5})/2$ . Kato showed that the only possible configurations of curves for a minimal surface with  $b_2 = 1$  and with a global spherical shell are that of  $\hat{X}_N$  here as well as those in Theorem 14.2 (i) and (ii).

In this case, we have

$$n_1 = 3 - \omega, n_0 = 1, n_{-1} = \omega$$
  

$$n_1^* = 2\omega - 5, n_0^* = \omega - 2, n_{-1}^* = \omega - 1.$$

Again *Y* and *Z* of Prop. 15.7 are non-singular in this case. By a modification as in (1) above, we get a different Z'.



(3) If  $\omega = (3 + \sqrt{7})/2 = [[3, 6]]$ , then  $\omega^* = (5 + \sqrt{7})/3 = [[3, 3, \overline{2}, 2, 2]]$ .



## **Bibliography**

- K. Akao On prehomogeneous compact Kahler manifolds, in 169 Manifolds-Tokyo 1973 (Hattori, ed.), Univ.of Tokyo Press, 1975, 365-371
- [2] K.Akao, Complex structure on  $S^{2p+1} \times S^{2q+1}$  with algebraic codimension 1, in *Complex Analysis and Algebraic Geometry* (Baily and Shioda, eds.), Iwanami Shoten and Cambridge Univ.Press, 1977, 205-225
- [3] A. Borel, Linear algebraic groups, Benjamin, New York, 1969
- [4] A.Borel and J.-P.Serre, Corners and arithmetic groups, Comm.Math.Helv. 48 (1973), 436-491
- [5] P.Cartier, Questions de ratinalité des diviseurs en géométrie algébrique, Bull.Soc.Math.France, 86 (1958), 177-251 *Appendice*
- [6] H.Cohn, Support polygon and the resolution of modular functional singularities, Acta Arithmetica, 24 (1973), 261-278
- [7] C.Delorme, Sous-monoïdes d'intersection compléte de *N*, Ann.Sci.Ecole Norm.Sup., 9 (1976), 145-154
- [8] M. Demazure, Sous-groupes algébriques de rang maximum du groupe de Cremona, Ann.Sci.Ecole Norm.Sup. 3 (1970), 507-588
- [9] P.Deligne and D.Mumford, The irreduciblility of the space of curves of given genus, Publ.Math.IHES, 36 (1969), 75-110170

141

- [10] A. Grothendieck and J.Dieudonné, Élément de géométrie algebrique, Publ.Math.IHES, 4, 8, 11, 17, 20, 24, 28, 32 (1960-1967)
- [11] L.Gerritzen, On non-archimedean representations of abelian varieties, Math.Ann. 196 (1972), 323-346
- [12] G.Gonzalez-Sprinberg, Eventails en dimension 2 et transforme de Nash, Centre de Math. Ecole Norm.Sup. Equipe de Rech.Assoc. au CNRS No.589, Fev.1977.
- [13] B.Grünbaum, Convex polytopes, Interscience, New York, 1967
- [14] B.Grünbaum, Polytopes, graphs, and complexes, Bull. Amer. Math. Soc., 76 (1970), 1131-1201
- [15] L.Gerritzen and H.Grauert, Die Azyklizität der affinoiden Uberdeckung, in *Global Analysis* (Iyanaga and Spencer, eds.), Univ.of Tokyo Press and Princeton Univ.Press, 1969, 159-184
- [16] R.Hartshorne, Ample subvarieties of algebraic varieties, Lecture Notes in Math. 156, Springer-Verlag, 1970
- [17] J.Herzog, Generators and relations of abelian semigroups and semigroup rings, Manuscripta Math. 3 (1970), 175-193
- 171 [18] H.Hironaka, Resolution of singularities of an algebraic variety over a field of characteristic zero, I-II, Ann.of Math. 79 (1964), 109-326
  - [19] F.Hirzebruch, Hilbert modular surface, L'enseignement Math. 21 (1973), 183-282
  - [20] M.Hochster, Rings of invariants of tori, Cohen-Macaulay rings generated by monomials, and polytopes, Ann.of Math. 96 (1972), 318-337
  - [21] J.Herzog and E.Kunz, Die Wertehalbgruppe eines lokalen Rings der Dimension 1, Sitzungsberichte der Heidelberger Akad.der Wiss., 2.Abh., Springer-Verlag, 1971

- [22] M.Inoue, On surface of class  $VII_0$ , Inventiones math. 24 (1974), 269-310
- [23] M.Inoue, New surfaces with no meromorphic functions, in Proceedings of the Intern. Congress of Math., Vancouver 1974, vol.1, 423-426
- [24] M.Inoue, New surfaces with no meromorhic functions, II, in *Complex Analysis and Algebraic Geometry* (Baily and Shioda, eds.), Iwanami Shoten and Cambridge Univ.Press, 1977, 91-106
- [25] M.Ishida, Graded factorial rings of diemension 3 of a mesticted bype, to appear in J.Math.Kyoto Univ.
- [26] M.Ishida, Compactifications of a family of generalized Jacobian varieties, to appear in the *Proceedings of the Intern.Symp.on Alg.Geom., Kyoto 1977*
- [27] B.Iversen, A fixed point formula for action of tori on algebraic 172 varieties, Inventiones math. 16 (1972), 229-236
- [28] T.Kaneyama, On equivariant vector bundles on an almost homogeneous variety, Nogoya Math.J. 57 (1975), 65-86
- [29] Ma.Kato, Complex manifolds containing "global" spherical shell, *I*, to appear in the *Proceedings of the Intern.Symp.on Alg.Geom.*, *Kyoto 1977*
- [30] K.Kodaira, On the structure of compact complex analytic surfaces

Ι	Amer. J. Math.	86 (1964),	751-798
II	ibid.	88 (1966),	682-721
III	ibid.	90 (1968),	55-83
IV	ibid.		1048-1066

See also Kunihiko Kodaira Collected Works, Vol.III Iwanami Shoten and Princeton Univ. Press, 1975

[31] K.Kodaira, Holomorphic mappings of polydiscs into compact complex manifolds, J.Diff. Geom. 6 (1971), 33-46

- [32] T.Mabuchi, Almost homogeneous torus actions on varieties with ample tangent bundle, to appear in Tohoku Math. J.
- [33] J.McCabe, p-adic theta functions, thesis Harvard Univ.1968
- [34] S.Mori, On a generalization of complete intersections, J. Math. Kyoto Univ. 15 (1975), 619-646
- [35] S.Mori, Graded factorial domains, to appear in J.Math. Kyoto Univ.
- 173 [36] H.Morikawa, Theta functions and abelian varieties over valuation fields of rank one, I-II, Nagoya Math.J. 20(1962), 1-27 and 21(1962), 231-250
  - [37] J.Morrow, Minimal normal compactifications of  $\mathbb{C}^2$ , Rice Univ.Studies 59 (1973), 97-112
  - [38] D.Mumford, An analytic construction of degenerating abelian varieties over complete rings, Compositio Math. 24 (1972), 239-272
  - [39] D.Mumford, Introduction to algebraic geometry, mimeographed notes, Harvard Univ.
  - [40] K.Miyake and T.Oda, Almost homogeneous algebraic varieties under algebraic torus action, in *Manifolds-Tokyo 1973* (Hattori,ed.), Univ.of Tokyo Press, 1975, 373-381
  - [41] S.Mori and H.Sumihiro, On Hartshorne's conjecture, to appear in J.Math.Kyoto Univ.
  - [42] M.Nagata, On rational surfaces, I-II, Memoirs Coll.Sci. Univ.Kyoto, 32 (1960), 351-370 and 33 (1960), 271-293
  - [43] O.Nagaya, Classification of 3-dimensional complete non-singular torus embeddings, Master's thesis, Nagoya Univ. 1976
  - [44] I.Nakamura, On moduli of stable quasi-abelian varieties, Nagoya Math.J. 58(1975), 149-214

- [45] I.Nakamura, Relative compactification of the Neron model and its applications, in *Complex Analysis and Algebraic Geometry* (Baily and Shioda,eds.),Iwanami Shoten and Cambridge Univ.Press, 1977,205-225
  - [46] Y.Namikawa, A new compactification of the Siegel space and the degeneration of abelian varieties, I-II, Math.Ann. 221 (1976), 97-141 and 201-241
  - [47] Y.Namikawa, Toroidal degeneration of abelian varieties, in *Complex Analysis and Algebraic Geometry* (Baily and Shioda, eds.), Iwanami Shoten and Cambridge Univ.Press, 1977, 227-237
  - [48] P.Olum, Non-abelian cohomology and van Kampen's theorem, Ann.of Math. 68 (1958), 658-668
  - [49] T.Oda and C.S.Seshadri, Compactifications of the generalized Jacobian variety, to appear in Transactions Amer.Math.Soc.
  - [50] P.Orlik and P.Wagreich, Algebraic surfaces with  $k^*$ -action, to appear
  - [51] O.Perron, *Die Lehre von Kettenbrünchen*, B.G.Teubner, Leipzig und Berlin, 1913
  - [52] V.L.Popov, Quasi-homogeneous affine algebraic varieties of the group SL(2), Izv.Akad.Nauk SSSR 37 (1973), 792-832 = Math.USSR Izv. 7 (1973), 793-831
  - [53] V.L.Popov, Classification of 3-dimensional affine algebraic varieties that are quasi-homogeneous with respect to an algebraic group, Izv.Akad.Nauk.SSSR 39 (1975), 566-609 = Math.USSR Izv. 9 (1975), 535-576
  - [54] M.Rapoport, Compactifications de 1' espace de modules de 175 Hilbert-Blumenthal,thesis Universite de Paris-Sud, 1976.
  - [55] M.Raynaud, Faiscaux amples sur les schemas en groupes et les espaces homogenes, Lecture Notes in Math. 119, Springer-Verlag, 1970

- [56] R.T.Rockafellar, Convex analysis, Princeton Univ.Press 1970
- [57] I.Satake, On the arithmetic of tube domains, Bull.Amer.Math. Soc. 79 (1973), 1076-1094
- [58] R.R.Simha, Algebraic varieties biholomorphic to C<sup>\*</sup>×C<sup>\*</sup>, to appear in Tohoku Math.J.
- [59] H.Sumihiro, Equivariant completion, I-II, J.Math.Kyoto Univ.14 (1974), 1-28 and 15 (1975), 573-605
- [60] T.Suma, On hyperelliptic surfaces, J.Fac.Sci.Univ.Tokyo, 16 (1970), 469-476
- [61] A.Ash, D.Mumford, M.Rapoport and Y.Tai, Smooth compcatification of locally symmetric varieties, Lie Groups: History Frontiers and Applications IV, Math.Sci.Press, Brookline, Mass. 1975
- [62] H.Tsuchihashi, Degenerations of hyperelliptic surfaces, Master's thesis, Tohoku Univ., 1978
- [63] G.Kempf, F.Knudsen, D.Mumford and B.Saint-Donat, *Toroidal embeddings I*, Lecture Notes in Math. 339, Springer 1973
- [64] T.Ueda, to appear